Tasneef

هيئة الإمارات للتصنيف
Emirates Classification Society

Rules for the Classification of Ships

Effective from 1 January 2021

Part C

Machinery, Systems and Fire Protection

www.tasneefmaritime.ae

+971 2 6922333 +971 2 4454333 info@tasneef.ae 111155, Abu Dhabi, UAE

GENERAL CONDITIONS

Definitions:

"*Administration*" means the Government of the State whose flag the Ship is entitled to fly or under whose authority the Ship is authorised to operate in the specific case.

"IACS" means the International Association of Classification Societies.

"*Interested Party*" means the party, other than the Society, having an interest in or responsibility for the Ship, product, plant or system subject to classification or certification (such as the owner of the Ship and his representatives, the ship builder, the engine builder or the supplier of parts to be tested) who requests the Services or on whose behalf the Services are requested.

"*Owner*" means the registered owner, the ship owner, the manager or any other party with the responsibility, legally or contractually, to keep the ship seaworthy or in service, having particular regard to the provisions relating to the maintenance of class laid down in Part A, Chapter 2 of the Rules for the Classification of Ships or in the corresponding rules indicated in the specific Rules.

"Rules" in these General Conditions means the documents below issued by the Society:

(i) Rules for the Classification of Ships or other special units;
(ii) Complementary Rules containing the requirements for product, plant, system and other certification or containing the requirements for the assignment of additional class notations;
(iii) Rules for the application of statutory rules, containing the rules to perform the duties delegated by Administrations;
(iv) Guides to carry out particular activities connected with Services;
(v) Any other technical document, as for example rule variations or interpretations.

"*Services*" means the activities described in Article 1 below, rendered by the Society upon request made by or on behalf of the Interested Party.

"Ship" means ships, boats, craft and other special units, as for example offshore structures, floating units and underwater craft.

"*Society*" or *"TASNEEF"* means Tasneef and/or all the companies in the Tasneef Group which provide the Services.

"*Surveyor*" means technical staff acting on behalf of the Society in performing the Services.

Article 1

1.1. The purpose of the Society is, among others, the classification and certification of ships and the certification of their parts and components. In particular, the Society:
(i) sets forth and develops Rules;
(ii) publishes the Register of Ships;
(iii) issues certificates, statements and reports based on its survey activities.

1.2. The Society also takes part in the implementation of national and international rules and standards as delegated by various G overnments.

1.3. The Society carries out technical assistance activities on request and provides special services outside the scope of classification, which are regulated by these general conditions, unless expressly excluded in the particular contract.

Article 2

2.1. The Rules developed by the Society reflect the level of its technical knowledge at the time they are published. Therefore, the Society, although committed also through its research and development services to continuous updating of the Rules, does not guarantee the Rules meet state-of-the-art science and technology at the time of publication or that they meet the Society's or others' subsequent technical developments.

2.2. The Interested Party is required to know the Rules on the basis of which the Services are provided. With particular reference to Classification Services, special attention is to be given to the Rules concerning class suspension, withdrawal and reinstatemen t. In case of doubt or inaccuracy, the Interested Party is to promptly contact the Society for clarification.
The Rules for Classification of Ships are published on the Society's website: www.tasneef.ae.

2.3. The Society exercises due care and skill:
(i) in the selection of its Surveyors
(ii) in the performance of its Services, taking into account the level of its technical knowledge at the time the Services are performed.

2.4. Surveys conducted by the Society include, but are not limited to, visual inspection and non-destructive testing. Unless otherwise required, surveys are conducted through sampling techniques and do not consist of comprehensive verification or monitoring of the Ship or of the items subject to certification. The surveys and checks made by the Society on board ship do not necessarily require the constant and continuous presence of the Surveyor. The Society may also commission laboratory testing, underwater inspection and other checks carried out by and under the responsibility of qualified service suppliers. Survey practices and procedures are selected by the Society based on its experience and knowledge and according to generally accepted technical standards in the sector.

Article 3

3.1. The class assigned to a Ship, like the reports, statements, certificates or any other document or information issued by the Society, reflects the opinion of the Society concerning compliance, at the time the Service is provided, of the Ship or product subject to certification, with the applicable Rules (given the intended use and within the relevant time frame).
The Society is under no obligation to make statements or provide information about elements or facts which are not part of th e specific scope of the Service requested by the Interested Party or on its behalf.

3.2. No report, statement, notation on a plan, review, Certificate of Classification, document or information issued or given as p art of the Services provided by the Society shall have any legal effect or implication other than a representation that, on the basis of the checks made by the Society, the Ship, structure, materials, equipment, machinery or any other item covered by such document or information meet the Rules. Any such document is issued solely for the use of the Society, its committees and clients or other duly authorised bodies and for no other purpose. Therefore, the Society cannot be held liable for any act made or document issued by other parties on the basis of the statements or information given by the Society. The validity, application, meaning and interpretation of a Certificate of Classification, or any other document or information issued by the Society in connection with its Services, is governed by the Rules of the Society, which is the sole subject entitled to make such interpretation. Any disagreement on technical matters between the Interested Party and the Surveyor in the carrying out of his functions shall be raised in writing as soon as possible with the Society, which will settle any divergence of opinion or dispute.

3.3. The classification of a Ship, or the issuance of a certificate or other document connected with classification or certificati on and in general with the performance of Services by the Society shall have the validity conferred upon it by the Rules of the Society at the time of the assignment of class or issuance of the certificate; in no case shall it amount to a statement or warranty of seaw orthiness,

structural integrity, quality or fitness for a particular purpose or service of any Ship, structur e, material, equipment or machinery inspected or tested by the Society.

3.4. Any document issued by the Society in relation to its activities reflects the condition of the Ship or the subject of certifi cation or other activity at the time of the check.

3.5. The Rules, surveys and activities performed by the Society, reports, certificates and other documents issued by the Society are in no way intended to replace the duties and responsibilities of other parties such as Governments, designers, ship builders, manufacturers, repairers, suppliers, contractors or sub-contractors, Owners, operators, charterers, underwriters, sellers or intended buyers of a Ship or other product or system surveyed.

These documents and activities do not relieve such parties from any fulfilment, warranty, responsibility, duty or obligation (also of a contractual nature) expressed or implied or in any case incumbent on them, nor do they confer on such parties any right, claim or cause of action against the Society. With particular regard to the duties of the ship Owner, the Services undertaken by the Society do not relieve the Owner of his duty to ensure proper maintenance of the Ship and ensure seaworthiness at all times. Likewise, t he Rules, surveys performed, reports, certificates and other documents issued by the Society are intended neither to guarantee the buyers of the Ship, its components or any other surveyed or certified item, nor to relieve the seller of the duties arising out of the law or the contract, regarding the quality, commercial value or characteristics of the item which is the subject of transaction.

In no case, therefore, shall the Society assume the obligations incumbent upon the above-mentioned parties, even when it is consulted in connection with matters not covered by its Rules or other documents.

In consideration of the above, the Interested Party undertakes to relieve and hold harmless the Society from any third party claim, as well as from any liability in relation to the latter concerning the Services rendered.

Insofar as they are not expressly provided for in these General Conditions, the duties and responsibilities of the Owner and Interested Parties with respect to the services rendered by the Society are described in the Rules applicable to the specific Service rendered.

Article 4

4.1. Any request for the Society's Services shall be submitted in writing and signed by or on behalf of the Interested Party. Such a request will be considered irrevocable as soon as received by the Society and shall entail acceptance by the applicant of all relevant requirements of the Rules, including these General Conditions. Upon acceptance of the written request by the Society, a contract between the Society and the Interested Party is entered into, which is regulated by the present General Conditions.

4.2. In consideration of the Services rendered by the Society, the Interested Party and the person requesting the service shall be jointly liable for the payment of the relevant fees, even if the service is not concluded for any cause not pertaining to the Society. In the latter case, the Society shall not be held liable for non-fulfilment or partial fulfilment of the Services requested. In the event of late payment, interest at the legal current rate increased by 1.5% may be demanded.

4.3. The contract for the classification of a Ship or for other Services may be terminated and any certificates revoked at the request of one of the parties, subject to at least 30 days' notice to be given in writing. Failure to pay, even in part, the fees due for Services carried out by the Society will entitle the Society to immediately terminate the contract and suspend the Services.

For every termination of the contract, the fees for the activities performed until the time of the termination shall be owed to the Society as well as the expenses incurred in view of activities already programmed; this is without prejudice to the right to compensation due to the Society as a consequence of the termination.

With particular reference to Ship classification and certification, unless decided otherwise by the Society, termination of the contract implies that the assignment of class to a Ship is withheld or, if already assigned, that it is suspended or withdrawn; any st atutory certificates issued by the Society will be withdrawn in those cases where provided for by agreements between the Society and the flag State.

Article 5

5.1. In providing the Services, as well as other correlated information or advice, the Society, its Surveyors, servants or agents operate with due diligence for the proper execution of the activity. However, considering the nature of the activities performed (see art. 2.4), it is not possible to guarantee absolute accuracy, correctness and completeness of any information or advice supplied. Express and implied warranties are specifically disclaimed.

Therefore, except as provided for in paragraph 5.2 below, and also in the case of activities carried out by delegation of Governments, neither the Society nor any of its Surveyors will be liable for any loss, damage or expense of whatever nature sustained by any person, in tort or in contract, derived from carrying out the Services.

5.2. Notwithstanding the provisions in paragraph 5.1 above, should any user of the Society's Services prove that he has suffered a loss or damage due to any negligent act or omission of the Society, its Surveyors, servants or agents, then the Society will pay compensation to such person for his proved loss, up to, but not exceeding, five times the amount of the fees charged for the specific services, information or opinions from which the loss or damage derives or, if no fee has been charged, a maximum of AED5,000 (Arab Emirates Dirhams Five Thousand only). Where the fees charged are related to a number of Services, the amount of the fees will be apportioned for the purpose of the calculation of the maximum compensation, by reference to the estimated time involved in the performance of the Service from which the damage or loss derives. Any liability for indirect or consequential loss, damage or expense is specifically excluded. In any case, irrespective of the amount of the fees charged, the maximum damages payable by the Society will not be more than AED5,000,000 (Arab Emirates Dirhams Five Millions only). Payment of compensation under this paragraph will not entail any admission of responsibility and/or liability by the Society and will be made without prejudice to the disclaimer clause contained in paragraph 5.1 above.

5.3. Any claim for loss or damage of whatever nature by virtue of the provisions set forth herein shall be made to the Society in writing, within the shorter of the following periods: (i) THREE (3) MONTHS from the date on which the Services were performed, or (ii) THREE (3) MONTHS from the date on which the damage was discovered. Failure to comply with the above deadline will constitute an absolute bar to the pursuit of such a claim against the Society.

Article 6

6.1. These General Conditions shall be governed by and construed in accordance with United Arab Emirates (UAE) law, and any dispute arising from or in connection with the Rules or with the Services of the Society, including any issues concerning responsibility, liability or limitations of liability of the Society, shall be determined in accordance with UAE law. The courts of the Dubai International Financial Centre (DIFC) shall have exclusive jurisdiction in relation to any claim or dispute which may arise out of or in connection with the Rules or with the Services of the Society.

6.2. However,

(i) In cases where neither the claim nor any counterclaim exceeds the sum of AED300,000 (Arab Emirates Dirhams Three Hundred Thousand) the dispute shall be referred to the jurisdiction of the DIFC Small Claims Tribunal; and

(ii) for disputes concerning non-payment of the fees and/or expenses due to the Society for services, the Society shall have the

right to submit any claim to the jurisdiction of the Courts of the place where the registered or operating office of the Interested Party or of the applicant who requested the Service is located.

In the case of actions taken against the Society by a third party before a public Court, the Society shall also have the right to summon the Interested Party or the subject who requested the Service before that Court, in order to be relieved and held harmless according to art. 3.5 above.

Article 7

7.1. All plans, specifications, documents and information provided by, issued by, or made known to the Society, in connection with the performance of its Services, will be treated as confidential and will not be made available to any other party other than the Owner without authorisation of the Interested Party, except as provided for or required by any applicable international, European or domestic legislation, Charter or other IACS resolutions, or order from a competent authority. Information about the status and validity of class and statutory certificates, including transfers, changes, suspensions, withdrawals of class, recommendations/conditions of class, operating conditions or restrictions issued against classed ships and other related information, as may be required, may be published on the website or released by other means, without the prior consent of the Interested Party.

Information about the status and validity of other certificates and statements may also be published on the website or released by other means, without the prior consent of the Interested Party.

7.2. Notwithstanding the general duty of confidentiality owed by the Society to its clients in clause 7.1 above, the Society's clients hereby accept that the Society may participate in the IACS Early Warning System which requires each Classification Society to provide other involved Classification Societies with relevant technical information on serious hull structural and engineering systems failures, as defined in the IACS Early Warning System (but not including any drawings relating to the ship which may be the specific property of another party), to enable such useful information to be shared and used to facilitate the proper working of the IACS Early Warning System. The Society will provide its clients with written details of such information sent to the involved Classification Societies.

7.3. In the event of transfer of class, addition of a second class or withdrawal from a double/dual class, the Interested Party undertakes to provide or to permit the Society to provide the other Classification Society with all building plans and drawings, certificates, documents and information relevant to the classed unit, including its history file, as the other Classification Society may require for the purpose of classification in compliance with the applicable legislation and relative IACS Procedure. It is the Owner's duty to ensure that, whenever required, the consent of the builder is obtained with regard to the provision of plans and drawings to the new Society, either by way of appropriate stipulation in the building contract or by other agreement.

In the event that the ownership of the ship, product or system subject to certification is transferred to a new subject, the latter shall have the right to access all pertinent drawings, specifications, documents or information issued by the Society or which has come to the knowledge of the Society while carrying out its Services, even if related to a period prior to transfer of ownership.

Article 8

8.1. Should any part of these General Conditions be declared invalid, this will not affect the validity of the remaining provisions.

EXPLANATORY NOTE TO PART C

1. Reference edition

The reference edition for Part C is this edition effective from 1 January 2016.

2. Amendments after the reference edition

2.1 Except in particular cases, a new edition of the Rules is published annually.

3. Effective date of the requirements

3.1 All requirements in which new or amended provisions with respect to those contained in the reference edition have been introduced are followed by a date shown in brackets.

The date shown in brackets is the effective date of entry into force of the requirements as amended by the last updating. The effective date of all those requirements not followed by any date shown in brackets is that of the reference edition.

3.2 Item 6 below provides a summary of the technical changes from the preceding edition. In general, this list does not include those items to which only editorial changes have been made not affecting the effective date of the requirements contained therein.

4. Rule Variations and Corrigenda

Until the next edition of the Rules is published, Rule Variations and/or corrigenda, as necessary, will be published on the TASNEEF web site (www.tasneef.ae). Except in particular cases, paper copies of Rule Variations or corrigenda are not issued.

5. Rule subdivision and cross-references

5.1 Rule subdivision

The Rules are subdivided into six parts, from A to F.

Part A: Classification and Surveys

Part B: Hull and Stability

Part C: Machinery, Systems and Fire Protection

Part D: Materials and Welding

Part E: Service Notations

Part F: Additional Class Notations

Each Part consists of:

- Chapters
- Sections and possible Appendices
- Articles
- Sub-articles
- Requirements

Figures (abbr. Fig) and Tables (abbr. Tab) are numbered in ascending order within each Section or Appendix.

5.2 Cross-references

Examples: Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 1, [3.2.1]or Pt A, Ch 1, App 1, [3.2.1]

- Pt A means Part A

The part is indicated when it is different from the part in which the cross-reference appears. Otherwise, it is not indicated.

- Ch 1 means Chapter 1

The Chapter is indicated when it is different from the chapter in which the cross-reference appears. Otherwise, it is not indicated.

- Sec 1 means Section 1 (or App 1 means Appendix 1)

The Section (or Appendix) is indicated when it is different from the Section (or Appendix) in which the cross-reference appears. Otherwise, it is not indicated.

- [3.2.1] refers to requirement 1, within sub-article 2 of article 3.

Cross-references to an entire Part or Chapter are not abbreviated as indicated in the following examples:

- Part A for a cross-reference to Part A
- Part A, Chapter 1 for a cross-reference to Chapter 1 of Part A.

6. Summary of amendments introduced in the edition effective from 1 January 2021

This edition of Part A contains amendments whose effective date is **1 January 2021**.

The date of entry into force of each new or amended item is shown in brackets after the number of the item concerned.

RULES FOR THE
CLASSIFICATION OF SHIPS

Part C
Machinery, Systems and Fire Protection

Chapters 1 **2 3 4**

Chapter 1 MACHINERY

Chapter 2 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS

Chapter 3 AUTOMATION

Chapter 4 FIRE PROTECTION, DETECTION AND EXTINCTION

CHAPTER 2
ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS

Section 1 General

1 Application 21

1.1 General
1.2 References to other regulations and standards

2 Documentation to be submitted 21

2.1

3 Definitions 22

3.1 General
3.2 Essential services
3.3 Primary essential services
3.4 Secondary essential services
3.5 Safety voltage
3.6 Low-voltage systems
3.7 High-voltage systems
3.8 Basic insulation
3.9 Supplementary insulation
3.10 Double insulation
3.11 Reinforced insulation
3.12 Earthing
3.13 Normal operational and habitable condition
3.14 Emergency condition
3.15 Main source of electrical power
3.16 Dead ship condition
3.17 Main generating station
3.18 Main switchboard
3.19 Emergency switchboard
3.20 Emergency source of electrical power
3.21 Distribution board
3.22 Final sub-circuit
3.23 Motor control centre (MCC)
3.24 Hazardous areas
3.25 Certified safe-type equipment
3.26 Environmental categories
3.27 Navigation Light (NL)

Section 2 General Design Requirements

1 Environmental conditions 26

1.1 General
1.2 Ambient air temperatures
1.3 Humidity
1.4 Cooling water temperatures
1.5 Salt mist
1.6 Inclinations
1.7 Vibrations

2 Quality of power supply 27

2.1 Voltage and frequency variation
2.2 Harmonic distortions

3 Electromagnetic susceptibility 28

3.1

4 Materials 28

4.1 General
4.2 Insulating materials for windings
4.3 Insulating materials for cables

5 Construction 29

5.1 General
5.2 Degree of protection of enclosures

6 Protection against explosion hazard 29

6.1 Protection against explosive gas or vapour atmosphere hazard
6.2 Protection against combustible dust hazard

Section 3 System Design

1 Supply systems and characteristics of the supply 31

1.1 Supply systems
1.2 Maximum voltages

2 Sources of electrical power 32

2.1 General
2.2 Main source of electrical power
2.3 Emergency source of electrical power
2.4 Use of emergency generator in port

3 Distribution 35

3.1 Earthed distribution systems
3.2 Insulated distribution systems
3.3 Distribution systems with hull return
3.4 General requirements for distribution systems
3.5 Harmonic distortion for ship electrical distribution system including harmonic filters
3.6 Main distribution of electrical power
3.7 Emergency distribution of electrical power
3.8 Shore supply
3.9 Supply of motors
3.10 Specific requirements for special power services
3.11 Power supply to heaters
3.12 Power supply to lighting installations
3.13 Special lighting services
3.14 Navigation lights
3.15 General emergency alarm system
3.16 Public address system
3.17 Combined general emergency alarm - public address system
3.18 Control and indication circuits
3.19 Power supply to the speed control systems of main propulsion engines
3.20 Power supply to the speed control systems of generator sets

4 Degrees of protection of the enclosures 41

4.1 General

5 Diversity (demand) factors 43

5.1 General

6 Environmental categories of the equipment 43

6.1 Environmental categories

7 Electrical protection 43

7.1 General requirements for overcurrent protection
7.2 Short-circuit currents
7.3 Selection of equipment
7.4 Protection against short-circuit
7.5 Continuity of supply and continuity of service
7.6 Protection against overload
7.7 Localisation of overcurrent protection
7.8 Protection of generators
7.9 Protection of circuits
7.10 Protection of motors
7.11 Protection of storage batteries
7.12 Protection of shore power connection
7.13 Protection of measuring instruments, pilot lamps and control circuits
7.14 Protection of transformers

8 System components 48

8.1 General

9 Electrical cables 48

9.1 General
9.2 Choice of insulation
9.3 Choice of protective covering
9.4 Cables in refrigerated spaces
9.5 Cables in areas with a risk of explosion
9.6 Electrical services required to be operable under fire conditions and fire-resistant cables
9.7 Cables for submerged bilge pumps
9.8 Internal wiring of switchboards and other enclosures for equipment
9.9 Current carrying capacity of cables
9.10 Minimum nominal cross-sectional area of conductors
9.11 Choice of cables

10 Electrical installations in hazardous areas 53

10.1 Electrical equipment
10.2 Electrical cables
10.3 Electrical installations in battery rooms
10.4 Electrical equipment allowed in paint stores and in enclosed spaces leading to paint stores
10.5 Electrical installations in stores for welding gas (acetylene) bottles
10.6 Special ships

11 Recording of the Type, Location and Maintenance Cycle of Batteries 55

11.1 Battery schedule

Section 4 Rotating Machines

1 Constructional and operational requirements for generators and motors 56

1.1 Mechanical construction
1.2 Sliprings, commutators and brushes
1.3 Terminal connectors
1.4 Electrical insulation

2 Special requirements for generators 56

2.1 Prime movers, speed governors and overspeed protection
2.2 A.c. generators

3 Testing of rotating machines 57

3.1 General
3.2 Shaft material
3.3 Tests

4 Description of the test 58

4.1 Examination of the technical documentation, as appropriate, and visual inspection
4.2 Insulation resistance measurement
4.3 Winding resistance measurement
4.4 Verification of the voltage regulation system
4.5 Rated load test and temperature rise measurements
4.6 Overload/overcurrent tests
4.7 Verification of steady short-circuit conditions
4.8 Overspeed test
4.9 Dielectric strength test
4.10 No load test
4.11 Verification of degree of protection
4.12 Verification of bearings

5 Requirements for AC Generating sets 60

5.1 General
5.2 Generating sets - requirements

Section 5 Transformers

1 Constructional and operational requirements 61

1.1 Construction
1.2 Terminals
1.3 Short-circuit conditions and parallel operation
1.4 Electrical insulation and temperature rise
1.5 Insulation tests

2 Testing 62

2.1 General
2.2 Tests on transformers

Section 6 Semiconductor Convertors

1 Constructional and operational requirements 63

1.1 Construction
1.2 Protection

1.3 Parallel operation with other power sources
1.4 Temperature rise
1.5 Insulation test

2 Testing 64

2.1 General
2.2 Tests on convertors

Section 7 Storage Batteries, Chargers and Uninterruptible Power Systems

1 Constructional requirements for batteries 65

1.1 General
1.2 Vented batteries
1.3 Valve-regulated sealed batteries
1.4 Tests on batteries

2 Constructional requirements for chargers 65

2.1 Characteristics
2.2 Tests on chargers

3 Uninterruptible power system (UPS) units as alternative and/or transitional power 66

3.1 Application
3.2 Definitions
3.3 Design and construction
3.4 Location
3.5 Performance
3.6 Testing and survey

Section 8 Switchgear and Controlgear Assemblies

1 Constructional requirements for main and emergency switchboards 68

1.1 Construction
1.2 Busbars and bare conductors
1.3 Internal wiring
1.4 Switchgear and controlgear, protective devices
1.5 Fuses
1.6 Auxiliary circuits
1.7 Instruments

2 Constructional requirements for distribution boards 71

2.1 Construction

3 Testing 71

3.1 General
3.2 Inspection of equipment, check of wiring and electrical operation test
3.3 High voltage test
3.4 Measurement of insulation resistance

Section 9 Cables

1 Constructional requirements 73

1.1 Construction

1.2 Conductors
1.3 Insulating materials
1.4 Inner covering, fillers and binders
1.5 Protective coverings (armour and sheath)
1.6 Identification

2 Testing 74

2.1 Type tests
2.2 Routine tests

Section 10 Miscellaneous Equipment

1 Lighting fittings 75

1.1 Applicable requirements
1.2 Construction

2 Accessories 75

2.1 Applicable requirements
2.2 Construction

3 Plug-and-socket connections 75

3.1 Applicable requirements

4 Heating and cooking appliances 75

4.1 Applicable requirements
4.2 General
4.3 Space heaters
4.4 Cooking appliances
4.5 Fuel oil and lube oil heaters
4.6 Water heaters

5 Cable trays/protective casings made of plastics materials 76

5.1 General requirement
5.2 Installation Requirements

Section 11 Location

1 General 77

1.1 Location
1.2 Areas with a risk of explosion

2 Main electrical system 77

2.1 Location in relation to the emergency system
2.2 Main switchboard

3 Emergency electrical system 77

3.1 Spaces for the emergency source
3.2 Location in relation to the main electrical system
3.3 Emergency switchboard
3.4 Emergency battery

4 Distribution boards 78

4.1 Distribution boards for cargo spaces and similar spaces
4.2 Distribution board for navigation lights

5 Cable runs 78

5.1 General
5.2 Location of cables in relation to the risk of fire and overheating
5.3 Location of cables in relation to electromagnetic interference
5.4 Services with a duplicate feeder
5.5 Emergency circuits
5.6 Electrical distribution in passenger ships

6 Storage batteries 79

6.1 General
6.2 Large vented batteries
6.3 Moderate vented batteries
6.4 Small vented batteries
6.5 Ventilation

Section 12 Installation

1 General 81

1.1 Protection against injury or damage caused by electrical equipment
1.2 Protection against damage to electrical equipment
1.3 Accessibility

2 Earthing of non-current carrying parts 81

2.1 Parts which are to be earthed
2.2 Methods of earthing
2.3 Earthing connections
2.4 Connection to the ship's structure
2.5 Earthed distribution systems
2.6 Aluminium superstructures

3 Rotating machines 82

3.1

4 Semiconductor convertors 83

4.1 Semiconductor power convertors

5 Vented type storage batteries 83

5.1 General
5.2 Protection against corrosion

6 Switchgear and controlgear assemblies 83

6.1 Main switchboard
6.2 Emergency switchboard
6.3 Distribution boards

7 Cables 84

7.1 General
7.2 Radius of bend
7.3 Fixing of cables
7.4 Mechanical protection
7.5 Penetrations of bulkheads and decks
7.6 Expansion joints
7.7 Cables in closed pipes or conduits
7.8 Cables in casings or trunking and conduits with removable covers
7.9 Cable ends
7.10 Joints and tappings (branch circuit)

7.11 Earthing and continuity of metal coverings of cables
7.12 Earthing and continuity of metal pipes, conduits and trunking or casings
7.13 Precautions for single-core cables for a.c.
7.14 Cables in refrigerated spaces
7.15 Cables in areas with a risk of explosion
7.16 Cables in the vicinity of radio equipment
7.17 Cables for submerged bilge pumps

8 Various appliances 89

8.1 Lighting fittings
8.2 Heating appliances
8.3 Heating cables and tapes or other heating elements

Section 13 High Voltage Installations

1 General 90

1.1 Field of application
1.2 Nominal system voltage
1.3 High-voltage, low-voltage segregation

2 System Design 90

2.1 Distribution
2.2 Degrees of protection
2.3 Insulation
2.4 Protection

3 Rotating machinery 91

3.1 Stator windings of generators
3.2 Temperature detectors
3.3 Tests

4 Power Transformers 92

4.1 General

5 Cables 92

5.1 General

6 Fuses 92

6.1 General

7 Switchgear and controlgear assemblies 92

7.1 General
7.2 Construction
7.3 Auxiliary systems
7.4 High voltage test

8 Installation 93

8.1 Electrical equipment
8.2 Cables

Section 14 Electric Propulsion Plant

1 General 94

1.1 Applicable requirements
1.2 Operating conditions

2 Design of the propulsion plant 94

2.1 General
2.2 Power supply
2.3 Auxiliary machinery
2.4 Electrical Protection
2.5 Excitation of electric propulsion motor

3 Construction of rotating machines and semiconductor convertors 95

3.1 Ventilation
3.2 Protection against moisture and condensate
3.3 Rotating machines
3.4 Semiconductor convertors

4 Control and monitoring 96

4.1 General
4.2 Power plant control systems
4.3 Indicating instruments
4.4 Alarm system
4.5 Reduction of power

5 Installation 97

5.1 Ventilation of spaces
5.2 Cable runs

6 Tests 97

6.1 Test of rotating machines

7 Specific requirements for PODs 98

7.1 General
7.2 Rotating commutators
7.3 Electric motors
7.4 Instrumentation and associated devices
7.5 Additional tests

Section 15 Testing

1 General 99

1.1 Rule application
1.2 Insulation-testing instruments

2 Type approved components 99

2.1

3 Insulation resistance 99

3.1 Lighting and power circuits
3.2 Internal communication circuits
3.3 Switchboards
3.4 Generators and motors

4 Earth 100

4.1 Electrical constructions
4.2 Metal-sheathed cables, metal pipes or conduits

5 Operational tests 100

5.1 Generating sets and their protective devices
5.2 Switchgear
5.3 Consuming devices
5.4 Communication systems
5.5 Installations in areas with a risk of explosion
5.6 Voltage drop

Appendix 1 Indirect Test Method for Synchronous Machines

1 General 102

1.1 Test method

Appendix 2 Battery Powered Ships

1 General 104

1.1 Application
1.2 Definitions
1.3 Documentation to be submitted

2 System design 104

2.1 General
2.2 Constructional requirements
2.3 Electrical protection
2.4 Battery charger

3 Control, monitoring, alarm and safety systems 106

3.1 General
3.2 Battery management systems (BMS)
3.3 Alarm system
3.4 Safety system
3.5 Energy Management system

4 Location 108

4.1 General
4.2 Battery space

5 Testing and inspection 110

5.1 Testing
5.2 Plans to be kept on board
5.3 Testing and inspection after installation on board

CHAPTER 3
AUTOMATION

Section 1 General Requirements

1 General 115

1.1 Field of application
1.2 Regulations and standards
1.3 Definitions
1.4 General

2 Documentation 116

2.1 General
2.2 Documents to be submitted
2.3 Documents for programmable electronic system
2.4 Documents for type approval of equipment

3 Environmental and supply conditions 118

3.1 General
3.2 Power supply conditions

4 Materials and construction 118

4.1 General
4.2 Type approved components

Section 2 Design Requirements

1 General 119

1.1

2 Power supply of automation systems 119

2.1 General

3 Control systems 119

3.1 General
3.2 Local control
3.3 Remote control systems
3.4 Automatic control systems

4 Control of propulsion machinery 120

4.1 Remote control
4.2 Remote control from navigating bridge
4.3 Automatic control
4.4 Automatic control of propulsion and manoeuvring units
4.5 Clutches
4.6 Brakes

5 Remote control of valves 121

5.1

6 Alarm system 121

6.1 General requirements
6.2 Alarm functions

7 Safety system 122

7.1 Design
7.2 Function
7.3 Shutdown
7.4 Standby systems
7.5 Testing

Section 3 Computer Based Systems

1 Scope 123

1.1 General
1.2 Reference to other regulations and standards
1.3 Definitions

2 System category 124

2.1

3 Requirements for software and supporting hardware 124

3.1 General
3.2 Life cycle approach
3.3 Quality system
3.4 Risk Assessment
3.5 Code production and testing
3.6 Approval of programmable devices for Category II and III systems
3.7 Environmental conditions for hardware
3.8 System security
3.9 Integration testing before installation on board
3.10 Final integration and on board testing

4 Requirements for data links for Category II and III systems 127

4.1 General requirements
4.2 Specific requirements for wireless data links

5 Limited approval 127

5.1

6 Modifications during operation 127

6.1

7 Tests and Documentation 128

7.1
7.1.3

Section 4 Constructional Requirements

1	General	129
	1.1 Construction 1.2 Materials 1.3 Component design 1.4 Environmental and supply conditions	
2	Electrical and/or electronic systems	129
	2.1 General 2.2 Electronic system 2.3 Electrical system	
3	Pneumatic systems	130
	3.1	
4	Hydraulic systems	130
	4.1	
5	Automation consoles	130
	5.1 General 5.2 Indicating instruments 5.3 VDU's and keyboards	

Section 5 Installation Requirements

1	General	131
	1.1	
2	Sensors and components	131
	2.1 General 2.2 Temperature elements 2.3 Pressure elements 2.4 Level switches	
3	Cables	131
	3.1 Installation 3.2 Cable terminations	
4	Pipes	132
	4.1	
5	Automation consoles	132
	5.1 General	

Section 6 Testing

1	General	133
	1.1 Commissioning	
2	Type approval	133
	2.1 General 2.2 Hardware type approval 2.3 Software type approval 2.4 Navigational and radio equipment 2.5 Loading instruments	
3	Acceptance testing	142
	3.1 General 3.2 Hardware testing 3.3 Software testing	
4	Commissioning	143
	4.1 General	

CHAPTER 4
FIRE PROTECTION, DETECTION AND EXTINCTION

Section 1 Requirements for Fire Protection, Detection and Extinction

1 General 147

1.1 Purpose and application

2 Documentation to be submitted 147

2.1

3 Definitions 148

3.1 Accommodation spaces
3.2 Cargo area
3.3 Cargo ship
3.4 Cargo spaces
3.5 Chemical tanker
3.6 Closed ro-ro spaces
3.7 Closed vehicle spaces
3.8 Combination carriers
3.9 Continuously manned central control stations
3.10 Control stations
3.11 Crude oil
3.12 Deadweight
3.13 Flashpoint
3.14 Gas carrier
3.15 Lightweight
3.16 Machinery spaces
3.17 Machinery spaces of category A
3.18 Main vertical zones
3.19 Oil fuel unit
3.20 Open ro-ro spaces
3.21 Open vehicle spaces
3.22 Passenger ship
3.23 Public spaces
3.24 Ro-ro spaces
3.25 Ro-ro passenger ship
3.26 Service spaces
3.27 Special category spaces
3.28 Tanker
3.29 Vehicle spaces
3.30 Weather decks

4 Type approved products 150

4.1

5 Probability of ignition 150

5.1 Arrangements for gaseous fuel for domestic purposes
5.2 Cargo area of tankers
5.3 Non-sparking fans

6 Suppression of fire - detection and alarm 152

6.1 Protection of machinery spaces

7 Suppression of fire: fire - fighting 153

7.1 Fire-extinguishing arrangements in machinery spaces

8 Fire safety systems: General requirements and application for inert gas systems 154

8.1 General requirements
8.2 Application
8.3 Requirements for equivalent systems

9 Inert gas systems 155

9.1 Contents
9.2 Engineering specifications
9.3 Requirements for all systems
9.4 Requirements for flue gas and inert gas generator systems
9.5 Requirements for nitrogen generator systems
9.6 Nitrogen /Inert Gas Systems Fitted for Purposes other than Inerting Required by SOLAS Reg. II-2/4.5.5.1 and 4.5.5.2

Part C
Machinery, Systems and Fire Protection

Chapter 2
ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS

SECTION 1	GENERAL
SECTION 2	GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS
SECTION 3	SYSTEM DESIGN
SECTION 4	ROTATING MACHINES
SECTION 5	TRANSFORMERS
SECTION 6	SEMICONDUCTOR CONVERTORS
SECTION 7	STORAGE BATTERIES, CHARGERS AND UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SYSTEMS
SECTION 8	SWITCHGEAR AND CONTROLGEAR ASSEMBLIES
SECTION 9	CABLES
SECTION 10	MISCELLANEOUS EQUIPMENT
SECTION 11	LOCATION
SECTION 12	INSTALLATION
SECTION 13	HIGH VOLTAGE INSTALLATIONS
SECTION 14	ELECTRIC PROPULSION PLANT
SECTION 15	TESTING
APPENDIX 1	INDIRECT TEST METHOD FOR SYNCHRONOUS MACHINES
APPENDIX 2	BATTERY POWERED SHIPS

SECTION 1 GENERAL

1 Application

1.1 General

1.1.1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to electrical installations on ships. In particular, they apply to the components of electrical installations for:

- primary essential services
- secondary essential services
- essential services for special purposes connected with ships specifically intended for such purposes (e.g. cargo pumps on tankers, cargo refrigerating systems, air conditioning systems on passenger ships)
- services for habitability.

The other parts of the installation are to be so designed as not to introduce any risks or malfunctions to the above services.

1.1.2

As stated in Note 1 to Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 1, [1.1.2], the statutory requirements of the SOLAS Convention and/or national safety regulations, as applicable, regarding fire protection, detection and extinction (hereinafter referred to as "fire protection statutory requirements") are no longer mandatory for the purpose of classification, except where the Society carries out surveys relevant to fire protection statutory requirements on behalf of the flag Administration. In such cases, fire protection statutory requirements are considered a matter of class and therefore compliance with these requirements is also verified by the Society for classification purposes.

1.1.3 *(1/7/2019)*

The Society may consider modified requirements for installations of ships having navigation notation "sheltered area" or "special navigation" in an area at not more than 6 miles from the shore.

1.2 References to other regulations and standards

1.2.1 The Society may refer to other regulations and standards when deemed necessary. These include the IEC publications, notably the IEC 60092 series.

1.2.2 When referred to by the Society, publications by the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) or other internationally recognised standards, are those currently in force at the date of agreement for ship classification.

2 Documentation to be submitted

2.1

2.1.1 The documents listed in Tab 1 are to be submitted.

The list of documents requested is to be intended as guidance for the complete set of information to be submitted, rather than an actual list of titles.

The Society reserves the right to request the submission of additional documents in the case of non-conventional design or if it is deemed necessary for the evaluation of the system, equipment or components.

Unless otherwise agreed with the Society, documents for approval are to be sent in triplicate if submitted by the Shipyard and in four copies if submitted by the equipment supplier.

Documents requested for information are to be sent in duplicate.

In any case, the Society reserves the right to require additional copies when deemed necessary.

2.1.2 *(1/1/2017)*

In addition to the documentation listed in Tab 1, a FMEA, carried out according to the Tasneef "Guide for Failure mode and Effect Analysis" or other equivalent methods, and a Test Program, identifying the tests to be carried out in order to verify the assumptions and conclusions of the FMEA, are to be submitted for approval for the following systems:

- systems required to remain operational after a casualty for passenger ship subjected to SOLAS requirements for a safe return to port;
- control and power systems to power-operated fire doors and status indication for all fire doors;
- control and power systems to power-operated watertight doors and their status indication;
- steering gear control system;
- electric propulsion control system;
- public address and general alarm system;
- remote emergency stop/shutdown arrangements for systems which may support the propagation of fire (see Note 1) and/or explosion;
- control and power system and position indication circuits for bow doors, stern doors, side doors, inner doors.

The Society may waive this requirement where the modes of failure and their consequences are clearly identifiable from the relevant drawings.

The FMEA may be required by the Society for other systems on a case by case basis, depending on their influence on the overall ship safety.

Note 1: where required by [1.1.2].

3 Definitions

3.1 General

3.1.1 Unless otherwise stated, the terms used in this Chapter have the definitions laid down by the IEC standards.

The definitions given in the following requirements also apply.

3.2 Essential services

3.2.1 Essential services are those services essential for propulsion and steering, and the safety of the ship, and services to ensure minimum comfortable conditions of habitability and necessary for special purposes connected with ships specifically intended for such purposes (e.g. cargo pumps on tankers, cargo refrigerating systems, air conditioning systems on passenger ships).

Table 1 : Documents to be submitted *(1/1/2021)*

No.	I/A **(1)**	Documents to be submitted
1	A	Single line diagram of main and emergency power and lighting systems.
2	A	Electrical power balance (main and emergency supply).
3	I	Calculation of short-circuit currents for each installation in which the sum of rated power of the energy sources which may be connected contemporaneously to the network is greater than 500 kVA (kW).
4	A	List of circuits including, for each supply and distribution circuit, data concerning the nominal current, the cable type, length and cross-section, nominal and setting values of the protective and control devices.
5	A	Single line diagram and detailed diagram of the main switchboard.
6	A	Single line diagram and detailed diagram of the emergency switchboard.
7	A	Diagram of main distribution boards, and 100kW and over motor control centers and single starters. **(2)**
8	A	Diagram of the general emergency alarm system, of the public address system and other intercommunication systems (see [1.1.2]).
9	A	Detailed diagram of the navigation-light switchboard.
10	I	Schedule for recording of the type, location and maintenance cycle of batteries used for essential and emergency services.
11	A **(3)**	Selectivity and coordination of the electrical protection.
12	A **(4)**	Single line diagram.
13	A **(4)**	Principles of control system and its power supply.
14	A **(4)**	Alarm and monitoring system including: • list of alarms and monitoring points • power supply diagram.
15	A **(4)**	Safety system including: • list of monitored parameters for safety system • power supply diagram.

(1) A: to be submitted for approval
I: to be submitted for information

(2) Main distribution boards are intended as distribution boards which are supplied directly or through transformer by main or emergency switchboard(s).

(3) for high voltage installations

(4) for electric propulsion installations.

3.3 Primary essential services

3.3.1 Primary essential services are those which need to be in continuous operation to maintain propulsion and steering.

Examples of equipment for primary essential services are the following:

- Steering gear
- Pumps for controllable pitch propellers
- Scavenging air blowers, fuel oil supply pumps, fuel valve cooling pumps, lubricating oil pumps and cooling water pumps for main and auxiliary engines and turbines necessary for the propulsion
- Forced draught fans, feed water pumps, water circulating pumps, condensate pumps, oil burning installations, for steam plants or steam turbines ship, and also for auxiliary boilers on ship where steam is used for equipment supplying primary essential services
- Azimuth thrusters which are the sole means for propulsion/steering with lubricating oil pumps, cooling water pumps
- Electrical equipment for electric propulsion plant with lubricating oil pumps and cooling water pumps
- Electric generators and associated power sources supplying the above equipment
- Hydraulic pumps supplying the above equipment

- Viscosity control equipment for heavy fuel oil
- Control, monitoring and safety devices/systems for equipment for primary essential services
- Speed regulators dependent on electrical energy for main or auxiliary engines necessary for propulsion.

The main lighting system for those parts of the ship normally accessible to and used by personnel and passengers is also considered (included as) a primary essential service.

3.4 Secondary essential services

3.4.1 Secondary essential services are those services which need not necessarily be in continuous operation to maintain propulsion and steering but which are necessary for maintaining the vessel's safety.

Examples of equipment for secondary essential services are the following:

- Windlasses
- Fuel oil transfer pumps and fuel oil treatment equipment
- Lubrication oil transfer pumps and lubrication oil treatment equipment
- Preheaters for heavy fuel oil
- Sea water pumps
- Starting air and control air compressors
- Bilge, ballast and heeling pumps
- Fire pumps and other fire-extinguishing medium pumps
- Ventilation fans for engine and boiler rooms
- Services considered necessary to maintain dangerous cargo in a safe condition
- Navigation lights, aids and signals
- Internal safety communication equipment
- Fire detection and alarm systems
- Electrical equipment for watertight closing appliances
- Electric generators and associated power supplying the above equipment
- Hydraulic pumps supplying the above equipment
- Control, monitoring and safety for cargo containment systems
- Control, monitoring and safety devices/systems for equipment for secondary essential services.

3.4.2 Services for habitability are those which need to be in operation to maintain the vessel's minimum comfort conditions for people on board.

Examples of equipment for maintaining conditions of habitability:

- Cooking
- Heating
- Domestic refrigeration
- Mechanical ventilation
- Sanitary and fresh water
- Electric generators and associated power sources supplying the above equipment.

3.5 Safety voltage

3.5.1 A voltage which does not exceed 50 V a.c. r.m.s. between conductors, or between any conductor and earth, in a circuit isolated from the supply by means such as a safety isolating transformer.

3.5.2 A voltage which does not exceed 50 V d.c. between conductors or between any conductor and earth in a circuit isolated from higher voltage circuits.

3.6 Low-voltage systems

3.6.1 Alternating current systems with rated voltages greater than 50 V r.m.s. up to 1000 V r.m.s. inclusive and direct current systems with a maximum instantaneous value of the voltage under rated operating conditions greater than 50 V up to 1500 V inclusive.

3.7 High-voltage systems

3.7.1 Alternating current systems with rated voltages greater than 1000 V r.m.s. and direct current systems with a maximum instantaneous value of the voltage under rated operating conditions greater than 1500 V.

3.8 Basic insulation

3.8.1 Insulation applied to live parts to provide basic protection against electric shock.

Note 1: Basic insulation does not necessarily include insulation used exclusively for functional purposes.

3.9 Supplementary insulation

3.9.1 Independent insulation applied in addition to basic insulation in order to provide protection against electric shock in the event of a failure of basic insulation.

3.10 Double insulation

3.10.1 Insulation comprising both basic insulation and supplementary insulation.

3.11 Reinforced insulation

3.11.1 A single insulation system applied to live parts, which provides a degree of protection against electric shock equivalent to double insulation.

Note 1: The term "single insulation system" does not imply that the insulation must be one homogeneous piece. It may comprise several layers which cannot be tested singly as supplementary or basic insulation.

3.12 Earthing

3.12.1 The earth connection to the general mass of the hull of the ship in such a manner as will ensure at all times an immediate discharge of electrical energy without danger.

3.13 Normal operational and habitable condition

3.13.1 *A condition under which the ship as a whole, the machinery, services, means and aids ensuring propulsion, ability to steer, safe navigation, fire and flooding safety, internal and external communications and signals, means of escape, and emergency boat winches, as well as the designed comfortable conditions of habitability are in working order and functioning normally.*

3.14 Emergency condition

3.14.1 *A condition under which any services needed for normal operational and habitable conditions are not in working order due to failure of the main source of electrical power.*

3.15 Main source of electrical power

3.15.1 *A source intended to supply electrical power to the main switchboard for distribution to all services necessary for maintaining the ship in normal operational and habitable condition.*

3.16 Dead ship condition

3.16.1 *The condition under which the main propulsion plant, boilers and auxiliaries are not in operation due to the absence of power.*

Note 1: Dead ship condition is a condition in which the entire machinery installation, including the power supply, is out of operation and the auxiliary services such as compressed air, starting current from batteries etc., for bringing the main propulsion into operation and for the restoration of the main power supply are not available.

3.17 Main generating station

3.17.1 *The space in which the main source of electrical power is situated.*

3.18 Main switchboard

3.18.1 *A switchboard which is directly supplied by the main source of electrical power and is intended to distribute electrical energy to the ship's services.*

3.19 Emergency switchboard

3.19.1 *A switchboard which in the event of failure of the main electrical power supply system is directly supplied by the emergency source of electrical power or the transitional source of emergency and is intended to distribute electrical energy to the emergency services.*

3.20 Emergency source of electrical power

3.20.1 *A source of electrical power, intended to supply the emergency switchboard in the event of failure of the supply from the main source of electrical power.*

3.21 Distribution board

3.21.1 *(1/1/2021)*

A switchgear and controlgear assembly which is supplied by the main or the emergency switchboard or distribution boards and is arranged for the distribution of electrical energy to other distribution boards, final distribution boards or final sub-circuits.

3.22 Final sub-circuit

3.22.1 That portion of a wiring system extending beyond the final required overcurrent protective device of a board.

3.23 Motor control centre (MCC)

3.23.1 *(1/1/2021)*

A switchgear and controlgear assembly which is supplied by main or emergency switchboards and is intended to control and distribute electrical energy.

Note 1: It is possible for the MCC to be a section or sections of the main switchboard.

3.24 Hazardous areas

3.24.1 Areas in which an explosive atmosphere is present, or may be expected to be present due to the presence of vapours, gases, flammable dusts or explosives in quantities such as to require special precautions for the construction, installation and use of electrical apparatus.

3.24.2 Hazardous areas are classified in zones based upon the frequency and the duration of the occurrence of explosive atmosphere.

3.24.3 Hazardous areas for explosive gas atmosphere are classified in the following zones:

- Zone 0: an area in which an explosive gas atmosphere is present continuously or is present for long periods
- Zone 1: an area in which an explosive gas atmosphere is likely to occur in normal operation
- Zone 2: an area in which an explosive gas atmosphere is not likely to occur in normal operation and if it does occur, is likely to do only infrequently and will exist for a short period only.

3.25 Certified safe-type equipment

3.25.1 Certified safe-type equipment is electrical equipment of a type for which a national or other appropriate authority has carried out the type verifications and tests necessary to certify the safety of the equipment with regard to explosion hazard when used in an explosive gas atmosphere.

3.26 Environmental categories

3.26.1 Electrical equipment is classified into environmental categories according to the temperature range, vibration levels, and resistance to chemically active substances and to humidity.

The designation of the environmental categories is indicated by the EC Code in Tab 2

The first characteristic numeral indicates the temperature range in which the electrical equipment operates satisfactorily, as specified in Tab 3

The second characteristic numeral indicates the vibration level in which the electrical equipment operates satisfactorily, as specified in Tab 4.

3.26.2 The tests for verifying the additional and supplementary letters and the characteristic numeral of the environmental categories are defined in Ch 3, Sec 6.

3.27 Navigation Light (NL)

3.27.1

Navigation Light (NL) means the following lights:

- *masthead light, sidelights, sternlight, towing light, all-round light, flashing light as defined in Rule 21 of COLREGs (see Note 1),*
- *all-round flashing yellow light required for air-cushion vessels by Rule 23 of COLREGs,*
- *manoeuvring light required by Rule 34(b) of COLREGs.*

Note 1:

COLREGs means Convention on the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, including their annexes.

Table 2 : EC Code

Code letter	First characteristic numeral	Second characteristic numeral	Additional letter	Supplementary letter
EC	(numerals 1 to 4)	(numerals 1 to 3)	(letter S) **(1)**	(letter C) **(2)**

(1) The additional letter S indicates the resistance to salt mist (exposed decks, masts) of the electrical equipment.

(2) The supplementary letter C indicates the relative humidity up to 80% (air conditioned areas) in which the electrical equipment operates satisfactorily.

Table 3 : First characteristic numeral *(1/7/2017)*

First characteristic numeral	Brief description of location	Temperature range °C	
1	Air conditioned areas	+ 5	+ 40
2	Enclosed spaces	+ 5	+ 45
3a	Electronic equipment inside consoles, housing, etc..	+ 5	+ 55
3b	Close to combustion engines, boilers and similar	+ 5	+ 70
4	Exposed decks, masts	- 25	+ 45

Table 4 : Second characteristic numeral

Second characteristic numeral	Brief description of location	Frequency range Hz	Displacement amplitude mm	Acceleration amplitude g
1	Machinery spaces, command and control stations, accommodation spaces, exposed decks, cargo spaces	from 2,0 to 13,2 from 13,2 to 100	1,0 -	- 0,7
2	Masts	from 2,0 to 13,2 from 13,2 to 50	3,0 -	- 2,1
3	On air compressors, on diesel engines and similar	from 2,0 to 25,0 from 25,0 to 100	1,6 -	- 4,0

SECTION 2 GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

1 Environmental conditions

1.1 General

1.1.1 The electrical components of installations are to be designed and constructed to operate satisfactorily under the environmental conditions on board.

In particular, the conditions shown in the tables in this Article are to be taken into account.

Note 1: The environmental conditions are characterised by:

- one set of variables including climatic conditions (e.g. ambient air temperature and humidity), biological conditions, conditions dependent upon chemically active substances (e.g. salt mist) or mechanically active substances (e.g. dust or oil), mechanical conditions (e.g. vibrations or inclinations) and conditions dependent upon electromagnetic noise and interference, and
- another set of variables dependent mainly upon location on vessels, operational patterns and transient conditions.

1.2 Ambient air temperatures

1.2.1 *(1/7/2017)*

For ships classed for unrestricted navigation, the reference ambient air temperature ranges are shown in Tab 1 in relation to the various locations of installation.

1.2.2

Where electrical equipment is installed within environmentally controlled spaces, the ambient temperature for which the equipment is to be suitable may be reduced from 45° and maintained at a value not less than 35° provided:

- the equipment is not for use for emergency services.
- temperature control is achieved by at least two cooling units so arranged that in the event of loss of one cooling unit, for any reason, the remaining unit(s) is (are) capable of satisfactorily maintaining the design temperature.
- the equipment is able to be initially set to work safely up to a 45° ambient temperature until such time as the lower ambient temperature is achieved; the cooling equipment is to be rated for a 45 ° ambient temperature.
- audible and visual alarms are fitted, at a continually manned control station, to indicate any malfunction of the cooling units.

1.2.3

In accepting an ambient temperature less than 45° it is to be ensured that electrical cables are adequately rated throughout their length for the maximum ambient temperature to which they are exposed.

1.2.4

The equipment used for cooling and maintaining the lower ambient temperature is to be classified for a secondary essential service.

1.2.5 For ships classed for service in specific zones, the Society may accept different ambient air temperature (e.g. for ships operating outside the tropical belt, the maximum ambient air temperature may be assumed as equal to + 40 °C instead of + 45 °C).

Table 1 : Ambient air temperature *(1/7/2017)*

Location	Temperature range, in °C	
Enclosed spaces	+ 5	+ 45
Electronic equipment inside console, housing, etc.	+ 5	+ 55
Fitted on combustion engines, boilers and similar	+ 5	+ 70
Exposed decks	- 25	+ 45

1.3 Humidity

1.3.1 For ships classed for unrestricted service, the humidity ranges shown in Tab 2 are applicable in relation to the various locations of installation.

Table 2 : Humidity

Location	Humidity
General	95% at 55 °C
Air conditioned areas	Different values may be considered on a case by case basis

1.4 Cooling water temperatures

1.4.1 The temperatures shown in Tab 3 are applicable to ships classed for unrestricted service.

1.4.2 For ships classed for service in specific zones, the Society may accept different values for the cooling water temperature (e.g. for ships operating outside the tropical belt, the maximum cooling water temperature may be assumed as equal to + 25 °C instead of + 32 °C).

Table 3 : Water temperature

Coolant	Temperature range, in °C	
Sea water	0	+ 32

1.5 Salt mist

1.5.1 The applicable salt mist content in the air is to be 1 mg/m^3.

1.6 Inclinations

1.6.1 The inclinations applicable are those shown in Tab 4.

The Society may consider deviations from these angles of inclination taking into consideration the type, size and service conditions of the ships.

1.7 Vibrations

1.7.1 In relation to the location of the electrical components, the vibration levels given in Tab 5 are to be assumed.

1.7.2 The natural frequencies of the equipment, their suspensions and their supports are to be outside the frequency ranges specified.

Where this is not possible using a suitable constructional technique, the equipment vibrations are to be dumped so as to avoid unacceptable amplifications.

2 Quality of power supply

2.1 Voltage and frequency variation

2.1.1

All electrical appliances supplied from the main or emergency systems are to be so designed and manufactured that they are capable of operating satisfactorily under the normally occurring variations in voltage and frequency.

2.1.2

Unless otherwise stated in national or international standards, all equipment is to operate satisfactorily with the variations from its rated value shown in Tab 6 to Tab 8 subject to the following conditions.

a) For alternating current components, the voltage and frequency variations shown in Tab 6 are to be assumed.

b) For direct current components supplied by d.c. generators or converted by rectifiers, the voltage variations shown in Tab 7 are to be assumed.

c) For direct current components supplied by electrical batteries, the voltage variations shown in Tab 8 are to be assumed.

2.1.3

Any special system, e.g. electronic circuits, whose function cannot operate satisfactorily within the limits shown in Tab 6, Tab 7 and Tab 8 is not to be supplied directly from the system but by alternative means, e.g. through stabilised supply.

2.2 Harmonic distortions

2.2.1 For components intended for systems without substantially static converter loads and supplied by synchronous generators, it is assumed that the total voltage harmonic distortion does not exceed 5%, and the single harmonic does not exceed 3% of the nominal voltage.

2.2.2 For components intended for systems fed by static converters, and/or systems in which the static converter load predominates, it is assumed that:

- the single harmonics do not exceed 5% of the nominal voltage up to the 15th harmonic of the nominal frequency, decreasing to 1% at the 100th harmonic (see Fig 1), and that
- the total harmonic distortion does not exceed 10%.

Table 4 : Inclination of ship

Type of machinery, equipment or component	Angles of inclination, in degrees **(1)**			
	Athwartship		Fore-and-aft	
	static	dynamic **(4)**	static	dynamic **(5)**
Machinery and equipment relative to main electrical power installation	15	22,5	5	7,5
Machinery and equipment relative to the emergency power installation and crew and passenger safety systems of the ship (e.g. emergency source of power, emergency fire pumps, etc.)	22,5 **(2)**	22,5 **(2)**	10	10
Switchgear and associated electrical and electronic components and remote control systems **(3)**	22,5	22,5	10	10

(1) Athwartship and fore-and-aft angles may occur simultaneously in their most unfavourable combination.
(2) In the case of gas carriers or chemical tankers, the emergency power supply must also remain operable with the ship flooded to a final athwartship inclination up to a maximum of 30°.
(3) No undesired switching operations or functional changes may occur up to an angle of inclination of 45°.
(4) The period of dynamic inclination may be assumed equal to 10 s.
(5) The period of dynamic inclination may be assumed equal to 5 s.

Table 5 : Vibration levels

Location	Frequency range Hz	Displacement amplitude mm	Acceleration amplitude g
Machinery spaces, command and control stations, accommodation spaces, exposed decks, cargo spaces	from 2,0 to 13,2 from 13,2 to 100	1,0 -	- 0,7
On air compressors, on diesel engines and similar	from 2,0 to 25,0 from 25,0 to 100	1,6 -	- 4,0
Masts	from 2,0 to 13,2 from 13,2 to 50	3,0 -	- 2,1

Figure 1

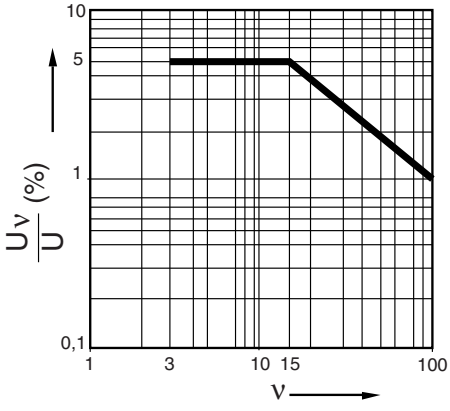


Table 6 : Voltage and frequency variations for a.c. distribution systems

Quantity in operation	Variations	
	Continuous	Transient
Voltage	+ 6% - 10%	± 20% (recovery time: 1,5 s)
Frequency	± 5%	± 10% (recovery time: 5 s)

Table 7 : Voltage variations for d.c. distribution systems

Parameters	Variations
Voltage tolerance (continuous)	± 10%
Voltage cyclic variation deviation	5%
Voltage ripple (a.c. r.m.s. over steady d.c. voltage)	10%

2.2.3 *(1/7/2017)*
Where harmonic filters are fitted onboard, e.g. in electric propulsion plant systems, the total harmonic distortion (THD) of electrical distribution systems is not to exceed 8%. This limit may be exceeded where all installed equipment and systems have been designed for a higher specified limit and this relaxation on limits is to be documented (harmonic distortion calculation report) and made available onboard as a reference for the surveyor in charge for survey.

Note 1: installation where harmonic filters are installed for single application frequency drives such as pump motors, are exclude from the application of this requirement.

Table 8 : Voltage variations for battery systems

Systems	Variations
Components connected to the battery during charging **(1)**	+30%, -25%
Components not connected to the battery during charging	+20%, -25%
(1) Different voltage variations as determined by the charging/discharging characteristics, including ripple voltage from the charging device, may be considered.	

3 Electromagnetic susceptibility

3.1

3.1.1 For electronic type components such as sensors, alarm panels, automatic and remote control equipment, protective devices and speed regulators, the conducted and radiated disturbance levels to be assumed are those given in Chapter 3.

Note 1: See also IEC Publication 60533 - "Electromagnetic Compatibility of Electrical and Electronic Installations in Ships and of Mobile and Fixed Offshore Units".

4 Materials

4.1 General

4.1.1 In general, and unless it is adequately protected, all electrical equipment is to be constructed of durable, flame-retardant, moisture-resistant materials which are not subject to deterioration in the atmosphere and at the temperatures to which they are likely to be exposed. Particular consideration is to be given to sea air and oil vapour contamination.

Note 1: The flame-retardant and moisture-resistant characteristics may be verified by means of the tests cited in IEC Publication 60092-101 or in other recognised standards.

4.1.2 Where the use of incombustible materials or lining with such materials is required, the incombustibility characteristics may be verified by means of the test cited in IEC Publication 60092-101 or in other recognised standards.

4.2 Insulating materials for windings

4.2.1 Insulated windings are to be resistant to moisture, sea air and oil vapour unless special precautions are taken to protect insulants against such agents.

4.2.2

The insulation classes given in Tab 9 may be used.

Table 9 : Insulation Classes

Class	Maximum continuous operating temperature °C
A	105
E	120
B	130
F	155
H	180

4.3 Insulating materials for cables

4.3.1 See Sec 9, [1.3].

5 Construction

5.1 General

5.1.1 All electrical apparatus is to be so constructed as not to cause injury when handled or touched in the normal manner.

5.1.2 The design of electrical equipment is to allow accessibility to each part that needs inspection or adjustment, also taking into account its arrangement on board.

5.1.3 Enclosures are to be of adequate mechanical strength and rigidity.

5.1.4 Enclosures for electrical equipment are generally to be of metal; other materials may be accepted for accessories such as connection boxes, socket-outlets, switches and luminaires. Other exemptions for enclosures or parts of enclosures not made of metal will be specially considered by the Society.

5.1.5 Cable entrance are not to impair the degree of protection of the relevant enclosure (see Sec 3, Tab 2).

5.1.6 All nuts and screws used in connection with current-carrying parts and working parts are to be effectively locked.

5.1.7 All equipment is generally to be provided with suitable, fixed terminal connectors in an accessible position for convenient connection of the external cables.

5.2 Degree of protection of enclosures

5.2.1 Electrical equipment is to be protected against the ingress of foreign bodies and water.

The minimum required degree of protection, in relation to the place of installation, is generally that specified in Sec 3, Tab 2.

5.2.2 The degrees of protection are to be in accordance with:

- IEC Publication No. 60529 for equipment in general
- IEC Publication No. 60034-5 for rotating machines.

5.2.3 For cable entries see [4.3.1].

6 Protection against explosion hazard

6.1 Protection against explosive gas or vapour atmosphere hazard

6.1.1 Electrical equipment intended for use in areas where explosive gas or vapour atmospheres may occur (e.g. oil tankers, liquefied gas carriers, chemical tankers, etc.), is to be of a "safe type" suitable for the relevant flammable atmosphere and for shipboard use.

6.1.2 The following “certified safe type” equipment is considered:

- intrinsically-safe: Ex(ia) - Ex(ib)
- flameproof: Ex(d)
- increased safety: Ex(e)
- pressurised enclosure: Ex(p)
- encapsulated: Ex(m)
- sand filled: Ex(q)
- special protection: Ex(s)
- oil-immersed apparatus (see Note 1): Ex(o)

Note 1: Only when required by the application.

6.1.3 Other equipment complying with types of protection other than those in [6.1.2] may be considered by the Society, such as:

- simple electrical apparatus and components (e.g. thermocouples, photocells, strain gauges, junction boxes, switching devices), included in intrinsically-safe circuits not capable of storing or generating electrical power or energy in excess of limits stated in the relevant rules
- electrical apparatus specifically designed and certified by the appropriate authority for use in Zone 0 or specially tested for Zone 2 (e.g. type “n” protection)
- equipment the type of which ensures the absence of sparks and arcs and of “hot spots” during its normal operation
- pressurised equipment
- equipment having an enclosure filled with a liquid dielectric, or encapsulated.

6.2 Protection against combustible dust hazard

6.2.1 Electrical appliances intended for use in areas where a combustible dust hazard may be present are to be arranged with enclosures having a degree of protection and maximum surface temperature suitable for the dust to which they may be exposed.

Note 1: Where the characteristics of the dust are unknown, the appliances are to have a degree of protection IP6X. For most dusts a maximum surface temperature of 200°C is considered adequate.

SECTION 3 SYSTEM DESIGN

1 Supply systems and characteristics of the supply

1.1 Supply systems

1.1.1 The following distribution systems may be used:

a) on d.c. installations:
- two-wire insulated
- two-wire with one pole earthed

b) on a.c. installations:
- three-phase three-wire with neutral insulated
- three-phase three-wire with neutral directly earthed or earthed through an impedance
- three-phase four-wire with neutral directly earthed or earthed through an impedance
- single-phase two-wire insulated
- single-phase two-wire with one phase earthed.

1.1.2 Distribution systems other than those listed in [1.1.1] (e.g. with hull return, three-phase four-wire insulated) will be considered by the Society on a case by case basis.

1.1.3 The hull return system of distribution is not to be used for power, heating or lighting in any ship of 1600 tons gross tonnage and upwards.

1.1.4 The requirement of [1.1.3] does not preclude under conditions approved by the Society the use of:

a) impressed current cathodic protective systems,

b) limited and locally earthed systems, or

c) insulation level monitoring devices provided the circulation current does not exceed 30 mA under the most unfavourable conditions.

Note 1: Limited and locally earthed systems such as starting and ignition systems of internal combustion engines are accepted provided that any possible resulting current does not flow directly through any dangerous spaces.

1.1.5 For the supply systems of ships carrying liquid developing combustible gases or vapours, see Pt E, Ch 7, Sec 5, Pt E, Ch 8, Sec 10 or Pt E, Ch 9, Sec 10.

1.1.6 For the supply systems in HV Installations, see Sec 13.

1.2 Maximum voltages

1.2.1 The maximum voltages for both alternating current and direct current low-voltage systems of supply for the ship's services are given in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Maximum voltages for various ship services

Use		Maximum voltage, in V
For permanently installed and connected to fixed wiring	Power equipment	1000
	Heating equipment (except in accommodation spaces)	500
	Cooking equipment	500
	Lighting	250
	Space heaters in accommodation spaces	250
	Control **(1)**, communication (including signal lamps) and instrumentation equipment	250
For permanently installed and connected by flexible cable	Power and heating equipment, where such connection is necessary because of the application (e.g. for moveable cranes or other hoisting gear)	1000
For socket-outlets supplying	Portable appliances which are not hand-held during operation (e.g. refrigerated containers) by flexible cables	1000
	Portable appliances and other consumers by flexible cables	250
	Equipment requiring extra precaution against electric shock where an isolating transformer is used to supply one appliance **(2)**	250
	Equipment requiring extra precaution against electric shock with or without a safety transformer **(2)**.	50

(1) For control equipment which is part of a power and heating installation (e.g. pressure or temperature switches for starting/stopping motors), the same maximum voltage as allowed for the power and heating equipment may be used provided that all components are constructed for such voltage. However, the control voltage to external equipment is not to exceed 500 V.

(2) Both conductors in such systems are to be insulated from earth.

1.2.2 Voltages exceeding those shown will be specially considered in the case of specific systems.

1.2.3 For high voltage systems see Sec 13.

2 Sources of electrical power

2.1 General

2.1.1 *Electrical installations are to be such that:*

a) All electrical auxiliary services necessary for maintaining the ship in normal operational and habitable conditions and for the preservation of the cargo *will be assured without recourse to the emergency source of electrical power.*

b) Electrical services essential for safety will be assured under various emergency conditions.

c) When a.c. generators are involved, attention is to be given to the starting of squirrel-cage motors connected to the system, particularly with regard to the effect of the magnitude and duration of the transient voltage change produced due to the maximum starting current and the power factor. The voltage drop due to such starting current is not to cause any motor already operating to stall or have any adverse effect on other equipment in use.

2.2 Main source of electrical power

2.2.1 *A main source of electrical power is to be provided, of sufficient capability to supply all electrical auxiliary services necessary for maintaining the ship in normal operational and habitable conditions* and for the preservation of the cargo *without recourse to the emergency source of electrical power.*

2.2.2 For ships propelled by electrical power and having two or more constant voltage propulsion generating sets which constitute the source of electrical energy for the ship's auxiliary services, see Sec 14.

2.2.3 *(1/7/2019)*

The main source of electrical power is to consist of at least two generating sets.

The capacity of these generating sets is to be such that in the event of any one generating set being stopped it will still be possible to supply those services necessary to provide:

a) normal operational conditions of propulsion and safety (see [2.2.4])

b) minimum comfortable conditions of habitability (see Sec 1, [3.4.2])

c) preservation of the cargo.

Such capacity is, in addition, to be sufficient to start the largest motor without causing any other motor to stop or having any adverse effect on other equipment in operation.

Note 1: for ships having navigation notation "sheltered area" or "special navigation" having an area of operation at not more than 6 miles from the shore (see Sec 1, [1.1.3]) and not subject to the SOLAS convention, the Society may accept that:

- the main source of electrical power consists of one generator (which may have the ship's propulsion machinery as prime mover), and one accumulator battery, provided that the capacity of the accumulator battery is sufficient to supply, without being recharged, all essential services for not less than 1.2 times the expected duration of the longest voyage, but not less than:
  - 5 hours, or
  - 30 minutes for ships having navigation notation "sheltered area",
- the main switchboard is supplied by only one cable by main generator and accumulator battery provided that main generator and accumulator battery are individually protected against short-circuit and overload.

2.2.4 Those services necessary to provide normal operational conditions of propulsion and safety include primary and secondary essential services.

For the purpose of calculating the capacity necessary for such services, it is essential to consider which of them can be expected to be in use simultaneously.

For a duplicated service, one being supplied electrically and the other non-electrically (e.g. driven by the main engine), the electrical capacity is not included in the above calculation.

2.2.5 The services in [2.2.4] do not include:

- thrusters not forming part of the main propulsion
- cargo handling gear
- cargo pumps
- refrigerators for air conditioning.

2.2.6 *Further to the provisions above, the generating sets shall be such as to ensure that with any one generator or its primary source of power out of operation, the remaining generating sets shall be capable of providing the electrical services necessary to start the main propulsion plant from a "dead ship" condition.*

2.2.7 *The emergency source of electrical power may be used for the purpose of starting from a "dead ship" condition if its capability either alone or combined with that of any other source of electrical power is sufficient to provide at the same time those services required to be supplied in accordance with the provisions of* [3.7.3] (items a, b, c, d) or Pt E, Ch 11, Sec 5 *for passenger ships.*

2.2.8 *The arrangement of the ship's main source of electrical power shall be such that essential services can be maintained regardless of the speed and direction of rotation of the main propulsion machinery or shafting.*

2.2.9 Generators driven by the propulsion plant (shaft generators) which are intended to operate at constant speed (e.g. a system where vessel speed and direction are controlled by varying propeller pitch) may be accepted as forming part of the main source of electrical power if, in all sailing and manoeuvring conditions including the propeller being stopped, the capacity of these generators is sufficient to provide the electrical power to comply with [2.2.3] and all further requirements, especially those of [2.2.6]. They are to be not less effective and reliable than the independent generating sets.

2.2.10

Generators and generator systems, having the ship's propulsion machinery as their prime mover but not forming part of the ship's main source of electrical power (see Note 1) may be used whilst the ship is at sea to supply electrical services required for normal operational and habitable conditions, provided that:

a) there are sufficient and adequately rated additional generators fitted, which constitute the main source of electrical power required by [2.2.1], meeting the provisions of [2.2.8]

b) arrangements are fitted to automatically start one or more of the generators constituting the main source of electrical power required by [2.2.1], in compliance with [3.4.5] and also in the event of frequency variations exceeding ± 10% of the limits specified below

c) within the declared operating range of the generators and/or generator systems, the specified limits for the voltage variations in IEC 60092-301 (see Note 3) and the frequency variations in Sec 2, Tab 6 can be met

d) the short-circuit current of the generator and/or generator system is sufficient to trip the generator/generator system circuit-breaker taking into account the selectivity of the protective devices for the distribution system

e) where considered appropriate, load shedding arrangements are fitted to meet the requirements of [3.4.6], [3.4.7] and [3.4.8]

f) on ships having remote control of the propulsion machinery from the navigating bridge, means are provided or procedures are in place so as to ensure that supplies to essential services are maintained during manoeuvring conditions in order to avoid a blackout situation (see Note 4).

Note 1: Such generator systems are those whose operation does not meet the requirements of IEC 60092-201, paragraph 6.2.3.

Note 2: IEC 60092-201 Electrical installations in ships - part 201: System design - General

Note 3: IEC 60092-301 Electrical installations in ships - part 301: Equipment - Generators and motors.

Note 4: A 'blackout situation' means that the main and auxiliary machinery installations, including the main power supply, are out of operation but the services for bringing them into operation (e.g. compressed air, starting current from batteries etc.) are available.

2.2.11

Where transformers, converters or similar appliances *constitute an essential part of the electrical supply system, the system is to be so arranged as to ensure the same continuity of supply as stated in this sub-article* [2.2].

This may be achieved by arranging at least two three-phase or three single-phase transformers supplied, protected and installed as indicated in Fig 1, so that with any one transformer not in operation, the remaining transformer(s) is (are) sufficient to ensure the supply to the services stated in [2.2.3].

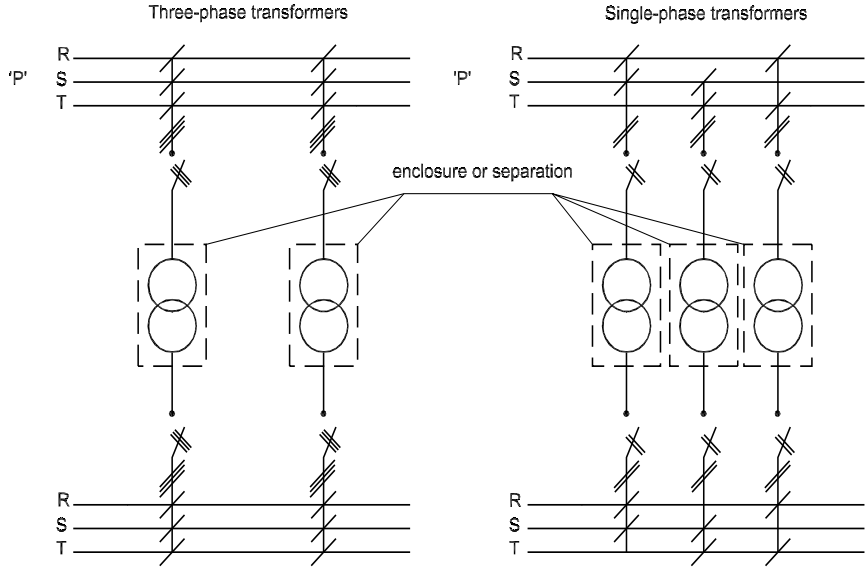
Each transformer required is to be located as a separate unit with separate enclosure or equivalent, and is to be served by separate circuits on the primary and secondary sides. Each of the primary circuits is to be provided with switchgears and protection devices in each phase. Each of the secondary circuits is to be provided with a multiple isolating switch.

Suitable interlocks or a warning label are to be provided in order to prevent maintenance or repair of one single-phase transformer unless both switchgears are opened on their primary and secondary sides.

2.2.12 For ships intended for operation with periodically unattended machinery spaces, see Part F, Chapter 3.

2.2.13 For starting arrangements for main generating sets, see Ch 1, Sec 2, [5.1].

Figure 1



2.3 Emergency source of electrical power

2.3.1 *A self-contained emergency source of electrical power shall be provided.*

2.3.2 *Provided that suitable measures are taken for safeguarding independent emergency operation under all circumstances, the emergency generator may be used, exceptionally, and for short periods, to supply non-emergency circuits.*

Exceptionally is understood to mean conditions, while the vessel is at sea, such as:

a) blackout situation

b) dead ship situation

c) routine use for testing

d) short-term parallel operation with the main source of electrical power for the purpose of load transfer.

Unless otherwise instructed by the Society, the emergency generator may be used during lay time in port for the supply of the ship mains, provided the requirements of [2.4] are complied with.

2.3.3 *The electrical power available shall be sufficient to supply all those services that are essential for safety in an emergency, due regard being paid to such services as may have to be operated simultaneously.*

2.3.4 *The emergency source of electrical power shall be capable, having regard to starting currents and the transitory nature of certain loads, of supplying simultaneously at least the services stated in* [3.7.3] *for the period specified, if they depend upon an electrical source for their operation.*

2.3.5 *The transitional source of emergency electrical power, where required, is to be of sufficient capacity to supply at least the services stated in* [3.7.7] *for half an hour, if they depend upon an electrical source for their operation.*

2.3.6 *An indicator shall be mounted in a suitable place on the main switchboard or in the machinery control room to indicate when the batteries constituting either the emergency source of electrical power or the transitional source of emergency electrical power referred to in* [2.3.13] *and* [2.3.14] *are being discharged.*

2.3.7 If the services which are to be supplied by the transitional source receive power from an accumulator battery by means of semiconductor convertors, means are to be provided for supplying such services also in the event of failure of the convertor (e.g. providing a bypass feeder or a duplication of convertor).

2.3.8

Where electrical power is necessary to restore propulsion, the capacity of the emergency source shall be sufficient to restore propulsion to the ship in conjunction to other machinery as appropriate, from a dead ship condition within 30 min. after blackout.

For the purpose of this requirement only, the dead ship condition and blackout are both understood to mean a condition under which the main propulsion plant, boilers and auxiliaries are not in operation and in restoring the propulsion, no stored energy for starting the propulsion plant, the main source of electrical power and other essential auxiliaries is to be assumed available. It is assumed that means are available to start the emergency generator at all times.

The emergency generator and other means needed to restore the propulsion are to have a capacity such that the necessary propulsion starting energy is available within 30 minutes of blackout/dead ship condition as defined above. Emergency generator stored starting energy is not to be directly used for starting the propulsion plant, the main source of electrical power and/or other essential auxiliaries (emergency generator excluded).

For steam ships, the 30 minute time limit given in SOLAS Convention can be interpreted as time from blackout/dead ship condition defined above to light-off the first boiler.

For passenger ships not engaged in international voyages and cargo ships of less than 500 gross tonnage or of 500 gross tonnage and upwards not engaged in international voyages, the 30 minute time limit does not apply.

2.3.9 *Provision shall be made for the periodic testing of the complete emergency system and shall include the testing of automatic starting arrangements,* where provided*.*

2.3.10 For starting arrangements for emergency generating sets, see Ch 1, Sec 2, [5.1].

2.3.11 *The emergency source of electrical power may be either a generator or an accumulator battery which shall comply with the requirements of* [2.3.12] *or* [2.3.13]*, respectively.*

2.3.12 *Where the emergency source of electrical power is a generator, it shall be:*

a) driven by a suitable prime mover with an independent supply of fuel, having a flashpoint (closed cup test) of not less than 43°C;

b) started automatically upon failure of the main source of electrical power supply to the emergency switchboard *unless a transitional source of emergency electrical power in accordance with (c) below is provided; where the emergency generator is automatically started, it shall be automatically connected to the emergency switchboard; those services referred to in* [3.7.7] *shall then be connected automatically to the emergency generator; and*

c) provided with a transitional source of emergency electrical power as specified in [2.3.14] *unless an emergency generator is provided capable both of supplying the services mentioned in that paragraph and of being automatically started and supplying the required load as quickly as is safe and practicable subject to a maximum of 45 s.*

2.3.13 *Where the emergency source of electrical power is an accumulator battery it shall be capable of:*

a) carrying the emergency electrical load without recharging while maintaining the voltage of the battery through-

out the discharge period within 12% above or below its nominal voltage;

b) automatically connecting to the emergency switchboard in the event of failure of the main source of electrical power; and

c) immediately supplying at least those services specified in [3.7.7].

2.3.14 *The transitional source of emergency electrical power where required by* [2.3.12] (item c) *shall consist of an accumulator battery which shall operate without recharging while maintaining the voltage of the battery throughout the discharge period within 12% above or below its nominal voltage and be so arranged as to supply automatically in the event of failure of either the main or the emergency source of electrical power for half an hour at least the services in* [3.7.7] *if they depend upon an electrical source for their operation.*

2.3.15 For the emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships, see Pt E, Ch 11, Sec 5.

2.3.16 *(1/1/2017)*

When the emergency generator room ventilation system is fitted with closing appliances (dampers or lovers), the following requirements apply:

a) ventilation louvers and closing appliances may either be hand-operated or power-operated (hydraulic / pneumatic / electric) and are to be operable under a fire condition;

b) hand-operated ventilation louvers and closing appliances are to be kept open during normal operation of the vessel. Corresponding instruction plates are to be provided at the location where hand-operation is provided;

c) power-operated ventilation louvers and closing appliances are to be of a fail-to-open type, and may be kept closed during normal operation of the vessel;

d) power-operated ventilation louvers and closing appliances are to open automatically whenever the emergency generator is starting / in operation;

e) it is to be possible to close ventilation openings by a manual operation from a clearly marked safe position outside the space, where the closing operation can be easily confirmed. The louver status (open / closed) shall be indicated at this position. Such closing shall not be possible from any other remote position.

2.4 Use of emergency generator in port

2.4.1 To prevent the generator or its prime mover from becoming overloaded when used in port, arrangements are to be provided to shed sufficient non-emergency loads to ensure its continued safe operation.

2.4.2 The prime mover is to be arranged with fuel oil filters and lubrication oil filters, monitoring equipment and protection devices as requested for the prime mover for main power generation and for unattended operation.

2.4.3 The fuel oil supply tank to the prime mover is to be provided with a low level alarm, arranged at a level ensuring sufficient fuel oil capacity for the emergency services for the period of time as required in [3.7].

2.4.4 The prime mover is to be designed and built for continuous operation and should be subjected to a planned maintenance scheme ensuring that it is always available and capable of fulfilling its role in the event of an emergency at sea.

2.4.5 Fire detectors are to be installed in the location where the emergency generator set and emergency switchboard are installed.

2.4.6 Means are to be provided to readily change over to emergency operation.

2.4.7 Control, monitoring and supply circuits for the purpose of the use of the emergency generator in port are to be so arranged and protected that any electrical fault will not influence the operation of the main and emergency services.

When necessary for safe operation, the emergency switchboard is to be fitted with switches to isolate the circuits.

2.4.8 Instructions are to be provided on board to ensure that, even when the vessel is underway, all control devices (e.g. valves, switches) are in a correct position for the independent emergency operation of the emergency generator set and emergency switchboard.

These instructions are also to contain information on the required fuel oil tank level, position of harbour/sea mode switch, if fitted, ventilation openings, etc.

3 Distribution

3.1 Earthed distribution systems

3.1.1 System earthing is to be effected by means independent of any earthing arrangements of the non-current-carrying parts.

3.1.2 Means of disconnection are to be fitted in the neutral earthing connection of each generator so that the generator may be disconnected for maintenance or insulation resistance measurements.

3.1.3 Generator neutrals may be connected in common, provided that the third harmonic content of the voltage wave form of each generator does not exceed 5%.

3.1.4 Where a switchboard is split into sections operated independently or where there are separate switchboards, neutral earthing is to be provided for each section or for each switchboard. Means are to be provided to ensure that the earth connection is not removed when generators are isolated.

3.1.5 Where for final sub-circuits it is necessary to locally connect a pole (or phase) of the sub-circuits to earth after the protective devices (e.g. in automation systems or to avoid electromagnetic disturbances), provision (e.g. d.c./d.c. convertors or transformers) is to be made such that current unbalances do not occur in the individual poles or phases.

3.1.6 For high voltage systems see Sec 13.

3.2 Insulated distribution systems

3.2.1 *Every insulated distribution system, whether primary or secondary* (see Note 1)*, for power, heating or lighting, shall be provided with a device capable of continuously monitoring the insulation level to earth* (i.e. the values of electrical insulation to earth) *and of giving an audible* and *visual indication of abnormally low insulation values.*

Note 1: A primary system is one supplied directly by generators. Secondary systems are those supplied by transformers or convertors.

3.2.2 For high voltage systems see Sec 13.

3.3 Distribution systems with hull return

3.3.1 *Where the hull return system is used,* if permitted*, all final sub-circuits, i.e. all circuits fitted after the last protective device, shall be two-wire.*

The hull return is to be achieved by connecting to the hull one of the busbars of the distribution board from which the final sub-circuits originate.

3.4 General requirements for distribution systems

3.4.1 The distribution system is to be such that the failure of any single circuit will not endanger or impair primary essential services and will not render secondary essential services inoperative for longer periods.

3.4.2 No common switchgear (e.g. contactors for emergency stop) is to be used between the switchboard's busbars and two primary non duplicated essential services.

3.4.3 *Where the main source of electrical power is necessary for propulsion and steering of the ship, the system shall be so arranged that the electrical supply to equipment necessary for propulsion and steering and to ensure safety of the ship will be maintained or immediately restored in the case of loss of any one of the generators in service.*

3.4.4

Where the electrical power is normally supplied by more than one generator set simultaneously in parallel operation, provision of protection, including automatic disconnection of sufficient non-essential services and if necessary secondary essential services and those provided for habitability, are to be made to ensure that, in case of loss of any of these generating sets, the remaining ones are kept in operation to permit propulsion and steering and to ensure safety.

3.4.5

Where the electrical power is normally supplied by one generator, provision are to be made, upon loss of power, for automatic starting and connecting to the main switchboard of stand-by generator(s)of sufficient capacity with automatic restarting of the essential auxiliaries, in sequential operation if required. Starting and connection to the main switchboard of one generator is to be as rapid as possible, preferably within 30 seconds after loss of power.

Where prime movers with longer starting time are used, this starting and connection time may be exceeded upon approval from the Society.

3.4.6

Load shedding or other equivalent arrangements are to be provided to protect the generators against sustained overload.

3.4.7

The load shedding is to be automatic.

3.4.8

The non-essential services, service for habitable conditions may be shed and, where necessary, additionally, the secondary essential services, sufficient to ensure the connected generator set or generator sets are not overloaded.

3.5 Harmonic distortion for ship electrical distribution system including harmonic filters

3.5.1 Monitoring of harmonic distortion levels for ships including harmonic filters *(1/1/2020)*

For ships where harmonic filters are installed on main busbars of electrical distribution system facilities to continuously monitor the levels of harmonic distortion experienced on the main busbar, as well as alerting the crew should the level of harmonic distortion exceed the acceptable limits, are to be fitted.

Where the engine room is provided with automation systems, the reading should be logged electronically, otherwise the reading is to be recorded in the engine log book for inspection by the surveyor.

3.5.2 Protection arrangements for harmonic filters *(1/1/2020)*

The harmonic filters should be arranged as three phase units with individual protection of each phase.

The activation of the protection arrangement in a single phase is to result in automatic disconnection of the complete filter.

Additionally, a current unbalance detection system, independent of the overcurrent protection, alerting the crew in case of current unbalance, is to be provided.

Arrangements are to be provided to alert the crew in the event of activation of the protection of a harmonic filter circuit.

Consideration is to be given to additional protection for the individual capacitor element as e.g. relief valve or overpressure disconnector in order to protect against damage from rupturing; this consideration should take into account the type of capacitors used.

3.5.3 Mitigation of the effects of harmonic filter failure on a ship's operation *(1/1/2020)*

The system integrator of the distribution system is to show, by calculation, the effect of a failure of a harmonic filter on the level of harmonic distortion experienced.

The system integrator of the distribution system is to provide the ship Owner with guidance documenting permitted modes of operation of the electrical distribution system while maintaining harmonic distortion levels within acceptable limits during normal operation as well as following the failure of any combination of harmonic filters.

The calculation results and validity of the guidance provided are to be verified by the surveyor during sea trials.

Note 1: harmonic filters installed for single application frequency drives, such as pump motors, may be excluded from requirements of [3.5].

3.6 Main distribution of electrical power

3.6.1 Where the main source of electrical power is necessary for propulsion of the ship, the main busbar is to be divided into at least two parts which are normally to be connected by circuit breakers or other approved means such as circuit breakers without tripping mechanisms or disconnecting links or switches by means of which busbars can be split safely and easily.

The connection of generating sets and associated auxiliaries and other duplicated equipment is to be equally divided between the parts as far as practicable, so that in the event of damage to one section of the switchboard the remaining parts are still supplied.

3.6.2 *(1/1/2021)*

Two or more units serving the same consumer (e.g. main and standby lubricating oil pumps) are to be supplied by individual separate circuits without the use of common feeders, protective devices or control circuits.

This requirement is satisfied when such units are supplied by separate cables from the main switchboard or from two independent distribution boards.

3.6.3 *A main electric lighting system which shall provide illumination throughout those parts of the ship normally accessible to and used by (passengers or) crew shall be supplied from the main source of electrical power.*

3.7 Emergency distribution of electrical power

3.7.1 *The emergency switchboard shall be supplied during normal operation from the main switchboard by an interconnector feeder which shall be adequately protected at the main switchboard against overload and short-circuit and which is to be disconnected automatically at the emergency switchboard upon failure of the main source of electrical power.*

Where the system is arranged for feedback operation, the interconnector feeder is also to be protected at the emergency switchboard at least against short-circuit.

3.7.2 *In order to ensure ready availability of the emergency source of electrical power, arrangements shall be made where necessary to disconnect automatically non-emergency circuits from the emergency switchboard to ensure that power shall be available to the emergency circuits.*

3.7.3 *(1/7/2019)*

The emergency source of electrical power shall be capable of supplying simultaneously at least the following services for the periods specified hereafter, if they depend upon an electrical source for their operation:

a) for a period of 3 hours, emergency lighting at every muster and embarkation station and over the sides;

b) for a period of 18 hours, emergency lighting:

1) in all service and accommodation alleyways, stairways and exits, personnel lift cars and personnel lift trunks;

2) in the machinery spaces and main generating stations including their control positions;

3) in all control stations, machinery control rooms, and at each main and emergency switchboard;

4) at all stowage positions for firemen's outfits;

5) at the steering gear;

6) at the fire pump referred to in (e) below, at the sprinkler pump, if any, at the emergency bilge pump, if any, and at the starting positions of their motors; and

7) in all cargo pump-rooms of tanker

c) for a period of 18 hours:

1) the navigation lights and other lights required by the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea in force;

2) on ships constructed on or after 1 February 1995 the VHF radio installation required by Regulation IV/7.1.1 and IV/7.1.2 of SOLAS Consolidated Edition 1992, and, if applicable:

- *the MF radio installation required by Regulations IV/9.1.1, IV/9.1.2, IV/10.1.2 and IV/10.1.3;*
- *the ship earth station required by Regulation IV/10.1.1; and*
- *the MF/HF radio installation required by Regulations IV/10.2.1, IV/10.2.2 and IV/11.1;*

d) for a period of 18 hours:

1) all internal communication equipment as required in an emergency [3.7.4]*;*

2) the shipborne navigational equipment as required by Regulation V/19; where such provision is unreasonable or impracticable the Society may waive this requirement for ships of less than 5 000 tons gross tonnage;

3) the fire detection and fire alarm systems (see Sec 1, [1.1.2]); and

4) intermittent operation of the daylight signalling lamp, the ship's whistle, the manually operated call points and all internal signals (see [3.7.5]) *that are required in an emergency, unless such services have an independent supply for the period of 18 hours*

from an accumulator battery suitably located for use in an emergency;

e) for a period of 18 hours: one of the fire pumps, when required, if dependent upon the emergency generator for its source of power (see Sec 1, [1.1.2]);

f) for the period of time required in Ch 1, Sec 11, [2]*, the steering gear where it is required to be so supplied.*

Note 1: for ships having navigation notation "sheltered area" or "special navigation" in an area at not more than 6 miles from the shore (see Sec 1, [1.1.3]) and not subject to the SOLAS convention, the Society may accept that the emergency source of electrical power is capable of supplying, for a period of not less than 2 times the expected duration of the longest voyage, but not less than:

- *3 hours, or*
- *30 minutes for ships having navigation notation "sheltered area",*

only the following services:

- *emergency lighting;*
- *navigation lights;*
- *radio installation;*
- *internal communication equipment and general alarm system;*
- *fire detection and alarm system;*
- *the steering gear pump (where it is required to be so supplied);*
- *fire pump (when required, if dependent upon the emergency source of electrical power for its source of power);*
- *power to the control, indication and alarm circuits of watertight and fire doors (where provided).*

3.7.4

Internal communication equipment required in an emergency generally includes:

a) the means of communication between the navigating bridge and the steering gear compartment

b) the means of communication between the navigating bridge and the position in the machinery space or control room from which the engines are normally controlled

c) the public address system (see Sec 1, [1.1.2]).

3.7.5

Internal signals required in an emergency generally include:

a) general alarm (see Sec 1, [1.1.2])

b) watertight door indication.

3.7.6 In a ship engaged regularly in voyages of short duration, i.e. voyages where the route is no greater than 20 nautical miles offshore or where the vessel has a class notation "Coastal Navigation", the Society may, if satisfied that an adequate standard of safety would be attained, accept a lesser period than the 18-hour period specified in [3.7.3] (item b to item e) but not less than 12 hours.

Note 1: In ships for which SOLAS is not applicable, a reduced period of time may be accepted.

Note 2: For passenger ships see Pt E, Ch 11, Sec 5.

3.7.7 *The transitional source of emergency electrical power, where required, shall supply for half an hour at least the following services if they depend upon an electrical source for their operation:*

a) the lighting required by [3.7.3](item a, b, c1)*; for this transitional phase, the required emergency electric lighting, in respect of the machinery space and the accommodation and service spaces may be provided by permanently fixed, individual, automatically charged, relay operated accumulator lamps; and*

b) all services required by [3.7.3] (item d1, d3, d4) *unless such services have an independent supply for the period specified from an accumulator battery suitably located for use in an emergency.*

3.8 Shore supply

3.8.1 Where arrangements are made for supplying the electrical installation from a source on shore or elsewhere, a suitable connection box is to be installed on the ship in a convenient location to receive the flexible cable from the external source.

3.8.2

Permanently fixed cables of adequate rating are to be provided for connecting the box to the main switchboard or emergency switchboard.

3.8.3 Where necessary for systems with earthed neutrals, the box is to be provided with an earthed terminal for connection between the shore's and ship's neutrals or for connection of a protective conductor.

3.8.4

The connection box is to contain a circuit-breaker or a switch-disconnector and fuses.

The shore connection is to be protected against short-circuit and overload; however, the overload protection may be omitted in the connection box if provided on the main or emergency switchboard.

3.8.5 Means are to be provided for checking the phase sequence of the incoming supply in relation to the ship's system.

3.8.6

The cable connection to the box is to be provided with at least one switch-disconnector on the main or emergency switchboard.

3.8.7

The shore connection is to be provided with an indicator at the main or emergency switchboard in order to show when the cable is energised.

3.8.8 At the connection box a notice is to be provided giving full information on the nominal voltage and frequency of the installation.

3.8.9

The switch-disconnector on the main or emergency switchboard is to be interlocked with the generator circuit-breakers in order to prevent its closure when any generator is supplying the main or emergency switchboard unless special provisions to the satisfaction of the Society are taken to permit safe transfer of electrical load.

3.8.10 Adequate means are to be provided to equalise the potential between the hull and the shore when the electrical installation of the ship is supplied from shore.

3.8.11

Where high voltage shore connections are provided, the requirements of Pt F, Ch 13, Sec 15 are to be complied with.

3.9 Supply of motors

3.9.1 A separate final sub-circuit is to be provided for every motor required for an essential service (and for every motor rated at 1 kW or more).

3.9.2 Each motor is to be provided with controlgear ensuring its satisfactory starting.

Depending on the capacity of the generating plant or the cable network, it may be necessary to limit the starting current to an acceptable value.

Direct on line starters are accepted if the voltage drop does not exceed 15% of the network voltage.

3.9.3 Efficient means are to be provided for the isolation of the motor and its associated control gear from all live poles of the supply.

Where the control gear is mounted on or adjacent to a switchboard, a disconnecting switch in the switchboard may be used for this purpose.

Otherwise, a disconnecting switch within the control gear enclosure or a separate enclosed disconnecting switch is to be provided.

3.9.4 Where the starter or any other apparatus for disconnecting the motor is remote from the motor itself, one of the following is to be arranged:

a) provision for locking the circuit disconnecting switch in the OFF position

b) an additional disconnecting switch fitted near the motor

c) provision such that the fuses in each live pole or phase can be readily removed and retained by persons authorised to have access to the motor.

3.10 Specific requirements for special power services

3.10.1 For the supply and characteristics of the distribution of the following services see the requirements listed:

- Steering gear: Ch 1, Sec 11, [2]
- Fire-extinguishing and detecting systems: Ch 4, Sec 1, [6]
- Permanently installed submergible bilge pump: Ch 1, Sec 10, [6.7.7]
- Ventilation fans: Chapter 4
- Fuel pumps: Ch 1, Sec 10
- Pumps discharging overboard above the lightest water line and in way of the area of lifeboat and liferaft launching: Ch 1, Sec 10, [5.2.4].

3.10.2 All power circuits terminating in a bunker or cargo space are to be provided with a multiple-pole switch outside the space for disconnecting such circuits.

3.11 Power supply to heaters

3.11.1 Each heater rated more than 16A is to be connected to a separate final circuit.

3.12 Power supply to lighting installations

3.12.1 Final sub-circuits for lighting supplying more than one lighting point and for socket-outlets are to be fitted with protective devices having a current rating not exceeding 16 A.

3.13 Special lighting services

3.13.1 In spaces such as:

- main and large machinery spaces
- large galleys
- passageways
- stairways leading to boat-decks
- public spaces

there is to be more than one final sub-circuit for lighting such that failure of any one circuit does not reduce the lighting to an insufficient level.

3.13.2 Where the emergency installation is required, one of the circuits in [3.13.1] may be supplied from the emergency source of power.

3.13.3 All lighting circuits terminating in a bunker or cargo space are to be provided with a multiple-pole switch outside the space for disconnecting such circuits.

3.14 Navigation lights

3.14.1

Navigation lights are to be connected separately to a distribution board specially reserved for this purpose.

Signalling lights may be connected to the navigation light distribution board, or to a separate distribution board.

3.14.2

The navigation light distribution board is to be supplied from two alternative circuits, one from the main source of power and one from the emergency source of power; see also [3.7].

The transfer of supply is to be practicable from the bridge, for example by means of a switch.

3.14.3 Each navigation light is to be controlled and protected in each insulated pole by a double-pole switch and a fuse or, alternatively, by a double-pole circuit-breaker, fitted on the distribution board referred to in [3.14.1].

3.14.4 Where there are double navigation lights, i.e. lights with two lamps or where for every navigation light a spare is also fitted, the connections to such lights may run in a single cable provided that means are foreseen in the distribution board to ensure that only one lamp or light may be supplied at any one time.

3.14.5 Each navigation light is to be provided with an automatic indicator giving audible and/or visual warning in the event of failure of the light. If an audible device alone is

fitted, it is to be connected to a separate source of supply from that of the navigation lights, for example an accumulator (storage) battery.

If a visual signal is used connected in series with the navigation light, means are to be provided to prevent the extinction of the navigation light due to the failure of the visual signal.

A minimum level of visibility is to be assured in the case of use of dimmer devices.

3.15 General emergency alarm system

3.15.1

For the application of this item [3.15], see Sec 1, [1.1.2].

3.15.2

An electrically operated bell or klaxon or other equivalent warning system installed in addition to the ship's whistle or siren, for sounding the general emergency alarm signal, is to comply with the requirements of this sub-article.

For passenger ships not engaged in international voyages and cargo ships of less than 500 gross tonnage or of 500 gross tonnage and upwards not engaged in international voyages, the system is to be capable of operation from the navigating bridge, it is to be continuously supplied from an emergency source of electrical power and it is to comply with [3.15.3], [3.15.4], [3.15.9], [3.15.11] and [3.15.13].

3.15.3 The general emergency alarm system is to be supplemented by either a public address system complying with the requirements in [3.16] or other suitable means of communication.

3.15.4 Entertainment sound system is to be automatically turned off when the general alarm system is activated.

3.15.5 The system is to be continuously powered and is to have an automatic change-over to a standby power supply in case of loss of normal power supply.

An alarm is to be given in the event of failure of the normal power supply.

3.15.6 The system is to be powered by means of two circuits, one from the ship's main supply and the other from the emergency source of electrical power required by [2.3] and [3.7].

3.15.7 The system is to be capable of operation from the navigation bridge and, except for the ship's whistle, also from other strategic points.

Note 1: Other strategic points are taken to mean those locations, other than the navigation bridge, from where emergency situations are intended to be controlled and the general alarm system can be activated. A fire control station or a cargo control station should normally be regarded as strategic points.

3.15.8 The alarm is to continue to function after it has been triggered until it is manually turned off or is temporarily interrupted by a message on the public address system.

3.15.9 The alarm system is to be audible throughout all the accommodation and normal crew working spaces.

3.15.10 The minimum sound pressure level for the emergency alarm tone in interior and exterior spaces is to be 80 dB (A) and at least 10 dB (A) above ambient noise levels occurring during normal equipment operation with the ship underway in moderate weather.

3.15.11 In cabins without a loudspeaker installation, an electronic alarm transducer, e.g. a buzzer or similar, is to be installed.

3.15.12 The sound pressure level at the sleeping position in cabins and in cabin bathrooms is to be at least 75 dB (A) and at least 10 dB (A) above ambient noise levels.

3.15.13 For cables used for the general emergency alarm system, see [9.6].

3.16 Public address system

3.16.1

For the application of this item [3.16], see Sec 1, [1.1.2].

3.16.2

The public address system is to be a loudspeaker installation enabling the broadcast of messages into all spaces where people on board are normally present.

3.16.3

In spaces such as under deck passageways, bosun's locker, hospital and pump rooms, the public address system is/may not be required.

For passenger ships not engaged in international voyages and cargo ships of less than 500 gross tonnage or of 500 gross tonnage and upwards not engaged in international voyages, item [3.16.9] does not apply.

3.16.4 Where the public address system is used to supplement the general emergency alarm system as per [3.15.3], it is to be continuously powered from the emergency source of electrical power required by [3.7].

3.16.5 The system is to allow for the broadcast of messages from the navigation bridge and from other places on board the ship as deemed necessary.

3.16.6 The system is to be protected against unauthorised use.

3.16.7 The system is to be installed with regard to acoustically marginal conditions and not require any action from the addressee.

3.16.8 Where an individual loudspeaker has a device for local silencing, an override arrangement from the control station(s), including the navigating bridge, is to be in place.

3.16.9 With the ship underway in normal conditions, the minimum sound pressure level for broadcasting emergency announcements is to be:

a) in interior spaces, 75 dB (A) and at least 20 dB (A) above the speech interference level

b) in exterior spaces, 80 dB (A) and at least 15 dB (A) above the speech interference level.

With respect to cabin/state rooms, the sound pressure level is to be attained as required inside such spaces during sea trials.

3.16.10

For cables used for the public address system, see [9.6].

3.17 Combined general emergency alarm - public address system

3.17.1

For the application of this item [3.17], see Sec 1, [1.1.2].

3.17.2 Where the public address system is the only means for sounding the general emergency alarm signal and the fire alarm, in addition to the requirements of [3.15] and [3.16], the following are to be satisfied:

- the system automatically overrides any other input system when an emergency alarm is required
- the system automatically overrides any volume control provided to give the required output for the emergency mode when an emergency alarm is required
- the system is arranged to prevent feedback or other interference
- the system is arranged to minimise the effect of a single failure so that the alarm signal is still audible (above ambient noise levels) also in the case of failure of any one circuit or component, by means of the use of:
  - multiple amplifiers
  - segregated cable routes to public rooms, alleyways, stairways and control stations
  - more than one device for generating electronic sound signal
  - electrical protection for individual loudspeakers against short-circuits.

3.18 Control and indication circuits

3.18.1 For the supply of automation systems, comprising control, alarm and safety system, see the requirements of Chapter 3.

3.18.2 Control and indicating circuits relative to primary essential services are to be branched off from the main circuit in which the relevant equipment is installed. Equivalent arrangements may be accepted by the Society.

3.18.3 Control and indicating circuits relative to secondary essential services and to non-essential services may be supplied by distribution systems reserved for the purpose to the satisfaction of the Society.

3.19 Power supply to the speed control systems of main propulsion engines

3.19.1 Electrically operated speed control systems of main engines are to be fed from the main source of electrical power.

3.19.2 *(1/1/2021)*

Where more than one main propulsion engine is foreseen, each speed control system is to be provided with an individual supply by means of separate wiring from the main switchboard or from two independent distribution boards.

Where the main busbars are divided into two sections, the governors are, as far as practicable, to be supplied equally from the two sections.

3.19.3 In the case of propulsion engines which do not depend for their operation on electrical power, i.e. pumps driven from the main engine, the speed control systems are to be fed both from the main source of electrical power and from an accumulator battery for at least 15 minutes or from a similar supply source.

Such battery may also be used for other services such as automation systems, where foreseen.

3.20 Power supply to the speed control systems of generator sets

3.20.1 Each electrically operated control and/or speed control system of generator sets is to be provided with a separate supply from the main source of electric power and from an accumulator battery for at least 15 minutes or from a similar supply source.

3.20.2 The wiring supplying the main source of electrical power is to be from the main switchboard or from independent section boards.

Where the main busbars are divided into two sections, the governors are, as far as practicable, to be supplied from the sections to which the relevant generators are connected.

4 Degrees of protection of the enclosures

4.1 General

4.1.1 The minimum required degree of protection for electrical equipment, in relation to the place of installation, is generally that specified in Tab 2.

4.1.2 Equipment supplied at nominal voltages in excess of 500 V and accessible to non-authorised personnel (e.g. equipment not located in machinery spaces or in locked compartments under the responsibility of the ship's officers) is to have a degree of protection against touching live parts of at least IP4X.

4.1.3 In addition to the requirements of this sub-article, equipment installed in spaces with an explosion hazard is also subject to the provisions of Sec 2, [6].

4.1.4 The enclosures of electrical equipment for the monitoring and control of watertight doors which are situated below the bulkhead deck are to provide suitable protection against the ingress of water.

In particular, the minimum required degree of protection is to be:

- IPX7 for electric motors, associated circuits and control components
- IPX8 for door position indicators and associated circuit components
- IPX6 for door movement warning signals.

Note 1: The water pressure testing of the enclosures protected to IPX8 is to be based on the pressure that may occur at the location of the component during flooding for a period of 36 hours.

Table 2 : Minimum required degrees of protection

Condition in location	Example of location	Switchboard Control gear Motor starters	Generators	Motors	Transformers	Luminaires	Heating appliances	Cooking appliances	Socket outiets	Accessories (e.g. switches, connection boxes)
Danger of touching live parts only	Dry accommodation spaces Dry control rooms	I P 20	X **(1)**	I P 20	I P 20	I P 20	I P20	I P 20	I P 20	I P 20
Danger of dripping liquid and/for moderate mechanical damage	Control rooms, wheel-house, radio room	I P 22	X	I P 22	I P 22	I P 22	I P22	I P 22	I P 22	I P 22
	Engine and boiler rooms above floor	I P 22	I P 22	I P 22	I P 22	I P 22	I P22	I P 22	I P 44	I P 44
	Steering gear rooms	I P 22	I P 22	I P 22	I P 22	I P 22	I P22	X	I P 44	I P 44
	Emergency machinery rooms	I P 22	I P 22	I P 22	I P 22	I P 22	I P22	X	I P 44	I P 44
	General storerooms	I P 22	X	I P 22	I P 22	I P 22	I P22	X	I P 22	I P 44
	Pantries	I P 22	X	I P 22	I P 22	I P 22	I P22	I P 22	I P 44	I P 44
	Provision rooms	I P 22	X	I P 22	I P 22	I P 22	I P22	X	I P 44	I P 44
	Ventilation ducts	X	X	I P 22	X	X	X	X	X	X
Increased danger of liquid and/for mechanical damage	Bathrooms and/or showers	X	X	X	X	I P 34	I P44	X	I P 55	I P 55
	Engine and boiler rooms below floor	X	X	I P 44	X	I P 34	I P44	X	X	I P 55
	Closed fuel oil separator rooms	I P 44	X	I P 44	I P 44	I P 34	I P44	X	X	I P 55
	Closed lubricating oil separator rooms	I P 44	X	I P 44	I P 44	I P 34	I P44	X	X	I P 55
Increased danger of liquid and mechanical damage	Ballast pump rooms	I P 44	X	I P 44 **(2)**	I P 44 **(2)**	I P 34	I P44	X	I P 55	I P 55
	Refrigerated rooms	X	X	I P 44	X	I P 34	I P44	X	I P 55	I P 55
	Galleys and laundries	I P 44	X	I P 44	I P 44	I P 34	I P44	I P 44	I P 44	I P 44
	Public bathrooms and shower	X	X	I P 44	I P 44	I P 34	I P44	X	I P 44	I P 44

Condition in location	Example of location	Switchboard Control gear Motor starters	Generators	Motors	Transformers	Luminaires	Heating appliances	Cooking appliances	Socket outiets	Accessories (e.g. switches, connection boxes)
Danger of liquid spraying. Presence of cargo dust. Serious mechanical damage. Aggressive fumes	Shaft or pipe tunnels in double bottom	I P 55	X	I P 55	I P 55	I P 55	I P55	X	I P 56	I P 56
	Holds for general cargo	X	X	I P 55	X	I P 55	I P55	X	I P 56	I P 56
	Ventilation trunks	X	X	I P 55	X	X	X	X	X	X
Danger of liquid in massive quantities	Open decks	I P 56	X	I P 56	X	I P 55	I P56	X	I P 56	I P 56

(1) The symbol "X" denotes equipment which it is not advised to install.

(2) Electric motors and starting transformers for lateral thrust propellers located in spaces similar to ballast pump rooms may have degree of protection IP22.

Table 3 : Required Environmental Categories *(1/7/2017)*

Location within main area				
Main Areas on Board	General	Inside cubicles, desks, etc.	On machinery such as internal combustion engines, compressors	Masts
Machinery Spaces/Steering Gear	EC21	EC3a1	EC3b3	X **(1)**
Control Room, Accommodation	EC21 EC11C	EC3a1	X	X
Bridge	EC21 EC11C	EC3a1	X	X
Pump Room, Holds, Rooms with no Heating	EC41	X	X	X
Exposed Decks	EC41S	X	X	EC42S

(1) The symbol "X" denotes locations which are generally not applicable.

4.1.5

For electrical and electronic equipment installed in engine rooms protected by fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems, see Ch 4, Sec 1, [7] .

5 Diversity (demand) factors

5.1 General

5.1.1 The cables and protective devices of final sub-circuits are to be rated in accordance with their connected load.

5.1.2 Circuits supplying two or more final sub-circuits are to be rated in accordance with the total connected load subject, where justifiable, to the application of a diversity (demand) factor.

5.1.3 A diversity (demand) factor may be applied provided that the known or anticipated operating conditions in a particular part of an installation are suitable for the application of diversity.

6 Environmental categories of the equipment

6.1 Environmental categories

6.1.1 The environmental categories of the electrical equipment, in relation to the place of installation, are generally to be those specified in Tab 3.

6.1.2 For ships operating outside the tropical belt, the maximum ambient air temperature may be assumed as equal to + 40 °C instead of + 45 °C, so that the first characteristic numeral changes from 1 to 3.

7 Electrical protection

7.1 General requirements for overcurrent protection

7.1.1 Electrical installations are to be protected against accidental overcurrents including short-circuit.

The choice, arrangement and performance of the various protective devices are to provide complete and coordinated automatic protection in order to ensure as far as possible:

- continuity of service in the event of a fault, through coordinated and discriminative action of the protective devices
- elimination of the effects of faults to reduce damage to the system and the hazard of fire as far as possible.

Note 1: An overcurrent is a current exceeding the nominal current.

Note 2: A short-circuit is the accidental connection by a relatively low resistance or impedance of two or more points in a circuit which are normally at different voltages.

7.1.2 Devices provided for overcurrent protection are to be chosen according to the requirements, especially with regard to overload and short-circuit.

Note 1: Overload is an operating condition in an electrically undamaged circuit which causes an overcurrent.

7.1.3 Systems are to be such as to withstand the thermal and electrodynamic stresses caused by the possible overcurrent, including short-circuit, for the admissible duration.

7.2 Short-circuit currents

7.2.1 In calculating the maximum prospective short-circuit current, the source of current is to include the maximum number of generators which can be simultaneously connected (as far as permitted by any interlocking arrangements), and the maximum number of motors which are normally simultaneously connected in the system.

The maximum number of generators or transformers is to be evaluated without taking into consideration short-term parallel operation (e.g. for load transfer) provided that suitable interlock is foreseen.

7.2.2 Short-circuit current calculations are to be performed in accordance with a method recognised by the Society, such as that given in IEC Publication 61363-1.

7.2.3 In the absence of precise data concerning the characteristics of generators, accumulator batteries and motors, the maximum short-circuit currents on the main busbars may be calculated as follows:

- for alternating current systems:

  $I_{ac} = 10\ I_{TG} + 3{,}5\ I_{TM}$

  $I_{pk} = 2{,}4\ I_{ac}$

- for direct current systems supplied by batteries:

  $I_p = K\ C_{10} + 6\ I_{TM}$

where:

I_p : Maximum short-circuit current

I_{ac} : r.m.s. value of the symmetrical component (at the instant T/2)

I_{pk} : Maximum peak value

I_{TG} : Rated current of all generators which can be connected simultaneously

C_{10} : Battery capacity in Ah for a discharge duration of 10 hours

K : Ratio of the short-circuit current of the batteries to C_{10}; (see Note 1)

I_{TM} : Rated current of all motors which are normally simultaneously connected in the system.

Note 1: For stationary batteries the following values may be assumed for guidance:

- vented lead-acid batteries: K = 8
- vented alkaline type batteries intended for discharge at low rates corresponding to a battery duration exceeding three hours: K = 15
- sealed lead-acid batteries having a capacity of 100 Ah or more or alkaline type batteries intended for discharge at high rates corresponding to a battery duration not exceeding three hours: K = 30.

7.3 Selection of equipment

7.3.1

Circuit-breakers are to be suitable for isolation.

Circuit-breakers of withdrawable type are required where they are not suitable for isolation.

7.3.2 Equipment is to be chosen on the basis of its rated current and its making/breaking capacity.

7.3.3

In the selection of circuit-breakers with intentional short-time delay for short-circuit release (e.g. generator circuit-breakers), those of utilisation category B are to be used and they are to be selected also taking into account their rated short-time withstand current capacity (I_{cw}).

For circuit-breakers without intentional short-time delay for short-circuit release, circuit breakers of utilisation category A may be used and they are to be selected according to their rated service short-circuit breaking capacity (I_{cs}).

Note 1: For the purpose of these Rules, circuit breakers are distinguished according to the utilization categories A and B in compliance with IEC publication 60947-2 as follows:

- Utilisation category A: circuit-breakers not specifically intended for selectivity under short-circuit conditions with respect to other short-circuit protective devices in series on the load side, i.e. without an intentional short-time delay provided for selectivity under short-circuit conditions and therefore without a short-time withstand current rating (Icw).
- Utilisation category B: circuit-breakers specifically intended for selectivity under short-circuit conditions with respect to other short-circuit protective devices in series on the load side, i.e. with an intentional short-time delay (which may be adjustable) provided for selectivity under short-circuit conditions. Such circuit-breakers have a short-time withstand current rating (Icw).

7.3.4 For duplicated essential services and non-essential services, circuit-breakers may be selected according to their ultimate short-circuit breaking capacity (I_{cu}).

7.3.5

Circuit breakers used in insulated systems are to comply with Annex H of IEC Publication 60947-2.

7.3.6 For switches, the making/breaking capacity is to be in accordance with utilisation category AC-22 A or DC-22 A (in compliance with IEC Publication 60947-3).

7.3.7 For fuse-switch disconnectors or switch-disconnector fuse units, the making/breaking capacity is to be in accordance with utilisation categories AC-23 A or DC-23 A (in compliance with IEC Publication 60947-3).

7.4 Protection against short-circuit

7.4.1 Protection against short-circuit currents is to be provided by circuit- breakers or fuses.

7.4.2 The rated short-circuit breaking capacity of every protective device is to be not less than the maximum prospective value of the short-circuit current at the point of installation at the instant of contact separation.

7.4.3 The rated short-circuit making capacity of every mechanical switching device intended to be capable of being closed on short-circuit is to be not less than the maximum value of the short-circuit current at the point of installation. On alternating current this maximum value corresponds to the peak value allowing for maximum asymmetry.

7.4.4 Every protective device or contactor not intended for short-circuit interruption is to be adequate for the maximum short-circuit current liable to occur at the point of installation having regard to the time required for the short-circuit to be removed.

7.4.5 The use of a protective device not having a short-circuit breaking or making capacity at least equal to the maximum prospective short-circuit current at the point where it is installed is permitted, provided that it is backed up on the generator side by a fuse or by a circuit-breaker having at least the necessary short-circuit rating and not being the generator circuit-breaker.

7.4.6 The same fuse or circuit-breaker may back up more than one circuit-breaker where the circuits concerned do not involve essential services.

7.4.7 The short-circuit performance of the back-up arrangement is to be equal to the requirements of IEC Publication 60947-2 for a single circuit-breaker having the same short-circuit performance category as the backed-up circuit-breaker and rated for the maximum prospective short-circuit level at the supply terminals of the arrangement.

7.4.8 Circuit-breakers with fuses connected to the load side may be used, provided the back-up fuses and the circuit-breakers are of coordinated design, in order to ensure that the operation of the fuses takes place in due time so as to prevent arcing between poles or against metal parts of the circuit-breakers when they are submitted to overcurrents involving the operation of the fuse.

7.4.9 When determining the performance requirements for the above-mentioned back-up protection arrangement, it is permissible to take into account the impedance of the various circuit elements of the arrangement, such as the impedance of a cable connection when the backed-up circuit-breaker is located away from the back-up breaker or fuse.

7.5 Continuity of supply and continuity of service

7.5.1 The protection of circuits is to be such that a fault in one service does not cause the loss of any essential services.

7.5.2 The protection of the emergency circuit is to be such that a failure in one circuit does not cause a loss of other emergency services.

Note 1: The continuity of supply for the primary essential services and the continuity of service for the secondary essential services are to be ensured.

The continuity of supply is the condition for which during and after a fault in a circuit, the supply to the healthy circuits (see circuit 3 in Fig 2) is permanently ensured.

The continuity of service is the condition for which after a fault in a circuit has been cleared, the supply to the healthy circuits (see circuit 3 in Fig 2) is re-established.

7.6 Protection against overload

7.6.1 Devices provided for overload protection are to have a tripping characteristic (overcurrent-trip time) adequate for the overload ability of the elements of the system to be protected and for any discrimination requirements.

7.6.2 The use of fuses up to 320 A for overload protection is permitted.

7.7 Localisation of overcurrent protection

7.7.1 Short-circuit protection is to be provided for every non-earthed conductor.

7.7.2 Overload protection is to be provided for every non-earthed conductor; nevertheless, in insulated single-phase circuits or insulated three-phase circuits having substantially balanced loads, the overload protection may be omitted on one conductor.

7.7.3 Short-circuit and overload protective devices are not to interrupt earthed conductors, except in the case of multiple disconnection devices which simultaneously interrupt all the conductors, whether earthed or not.

7.7.4 Electrical protection is to be located as close as possible to the origin of the protected circuit.

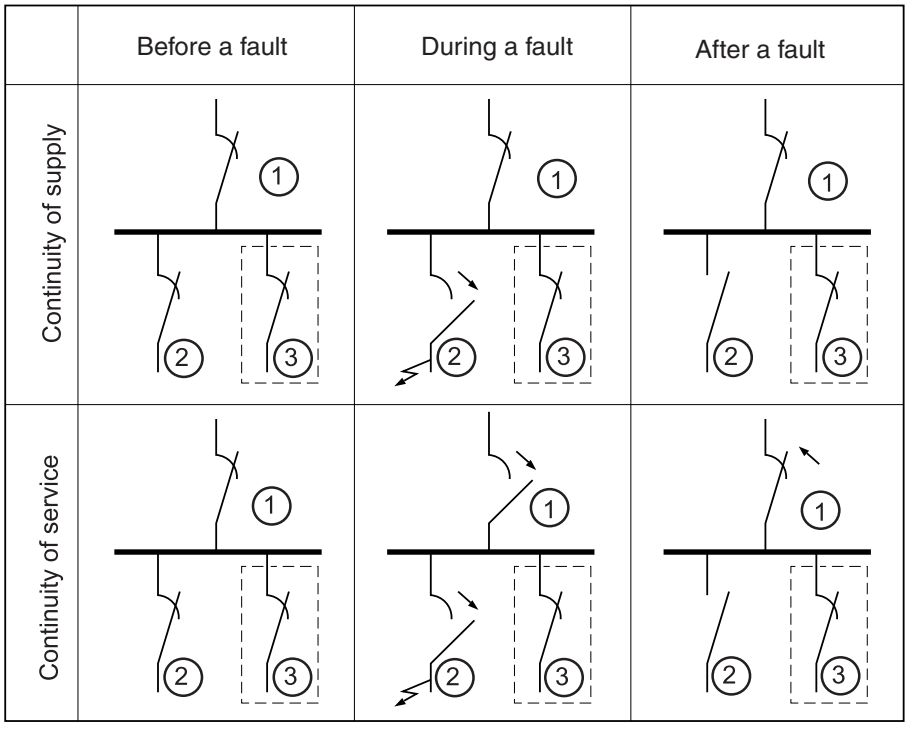
7.8 Protection of generators

7.8.1 Generators are to be protected against short-circuits and overloads by multipole circuit-breakers.

For generators not arranged to operate in parallel with a rated output equal to or less than 50 kVA, a multipole switch with a fuse in each insulated phase on the generator side may be accepted.

7.8.2 When multipole switch and fuses are used, the fuse rating is to be maximum 110% of the generator rated current.

Figure 2



7.8.3 Where a circuit-breaker is used:

a) the overload protection is to trip the generator circuit-breaker at an overload between 10% and 50%; for an overload of 50% of the rated current of the generator the time delay is not to exceed 2 minutes; however, the figure of 50% or the time delay of 2 minutes may be exceeded if the construction of the generator permits this

b) the setting of the short-circuit protection is to instantaneously trip the generator circuit-breaker at an overcurrent less than the steady short-circuit current of the generator. Short time delays (e.g. from 0,5 s to 1 s) may be introduced for discrimination requirements in "instantaneous" tripping devices.

7.8.4 For emergency generators the overload protection may, instead of disconnecting the generator automatically, give a visual and audible alarm in a permanently attended space.

7.8.5 After disconnection of a generator due to overload, the circuit-breaker is to be ready for immediate reclosure.

7.8.6 Generator circuit-breakers are to be provided with a reclosing inhibitor which prevents their automatic reclosure after tripping due to a short-circuit.

7.8.7 Generators having a capacity of 1500 kVA or above are to be equipped with a suitable protective device or system which, in the event of a short-circuit in the generator or in the supply cable between the generator and its circuit-breaker, will de-excite the generator and open the circuit-breaker (e.g. by means of differential protection).

7.8.8 *Where the main source of electrical power is necessary for the propulsion of the ship, load shedding or other equivalent arrangements are to be provided to protect the generators against sustained overload.*

7.8.9 Arrangements are to be made to disconnect or reduce automatically the excess load when the generators are overloaded in such a way as to prevent a sustained loss of speed and/or voltage (see Sec 2, Tab 6). The operation of such device is to activate a visual and audible alarm. A time delay of 5-20 s is considered acceptable.

7.8.10 When an overload is detected the load shedding system is to disconnect automatically, after an appropriate time delay, the circuits supplying the non-essential services and, if necessary, the secondary essential services in a second stage.

7.8.11 Alternating current generators arranged to operate in parallel are to be provided with reverse-power protection.

The protection is to be selected in accordance with the characteristics of the prime mover.

The following values are recommended:

- 2-6% of the rated power for turbogenerators
- 8-15% of the rated power for diesel generators.

The reverse-power protection may be replaced by other devices ensuring adequate protection of the prime movers.

7.8.12 Generators are to be provided with an undervoltage protection which trips the breaker if the voltage falls to 70% - 35% of the rated voltage.

For generators arranged for parallel operation, measures are to be taken to prevent the generator breaker from closing if

the generator is not generating and to prevent the generator remaining connected to the busbars if voltage collapses.

The operation of the undervoltage release is to be instantaneous when preventing closure of the breaker, but it is to be delayed for selectivity purposes when tripping the breaker.

7.9 Protection of circuits

7.9.1 *Each separate circuit shall be protected against short-circuit and against overload, unless otherwise specified in these Rules or where the Society may exceptionally otherwise permit.*

7.9.2 Each circuit is to be protected by a multipole circuit-breaker or switch and fuses against overloads and short-circuits.

7.9.3 Circuits for lighting are to be disconnected on both non-earthed conductors; single-pole disconnection of final sub-circuits with both poles insulated is permitted only in accommodation spaces.

7.9.4 The protective devices of the circuits supplying motors are to allow excess current to pass during transient starting of motors.

7.9.5 Final sub-circuits which supply one consumer with its own overload protection (for example motors), or consumers which cannot be overloaded (for example permanently wired heating circuits and lighting circuits), may be provided with short-circuit protection only.

7.9.6 Steering gear circuits are to be provided with short-circuit protection only (see Ch 1, Sec 11, [2]).

7.10 Protection of motors

7.10.1 Motors of rating exceeding 1 kW and all motors for essential services are to be protected individually against overload and short-circuit. The short-circuit protection may be provided by the same protective device for the motor and its supply cable (see [7.9.5]).

7.10.2 For motors intended for essential services, the overload protection may be replaced by an overload alarm (for steering gear motors see Ch 1, Sec 11, [2]).

7.10.3 The protective devices are to be designed so as to allow excess current to pass during the normal accelerating period of motors according to the conditions corresponding to normal use.

If the current/time characteristic of the overload protection device does not correspond to the starting conditions of a motor (e.g. for motors with extra-long starting period), provision may be made to suppress operation of the device during the acceleration period on condition that the short-circuit protection remains operative and the suppression of overload protection is only temporary.

7.10.4 For continuous duty motors the protective gear is to have a time delay characteristic which ensures reliable thermal protection against overload.

7.10.5 The protective devices are to be adjusted so as to limit the maximum continuous current to a value within the range 105% - 120% of the motor's rated full load current.

7.10.6 For intermittent duty motors the current setting and the delay (as a function of time) of the protective devices are to be chosen in relation to the actual service conditions of the motor.

7.10.7 Where fuses are used to protect polyphase motor circuits, means are to be provided to protect the motor against unacceptable overload in the case of single phasing.

7.10.8 Motors rated above 1 kW are to be provided with:

- undervoltage protection, operative on the reduction or failure of voltage, to cause and maintain the interruption of power in the circuit until the motor is deliberately restarted or
- undervoltage release, operative on the reduction or failure of voltage, so arranged that the motor restarts automatically when power is restored after a power failure.

7.10.9 The automatic restart of a motor is not to produce a starting current such as to cause excessive voltage drop.

In the case of several motors required to restart automatically, the total starting current is not to cause an excessive voltage drop or sudden surge current; to this end, it may be necessary to achieve a sequence start.

7.10.10 The undervoltage protective devices are to allow the motor to be started when the voltage exceeds 85% of the rated voltage and are to intervene without fail when the voltage drops to less than approximately 20% of the rated voltage, at the rated frequency and with a time delay as necessary.

7.11 Protection of storage batteries

7.11.1 Batteries are to be protected against overload and short-circuit by means of fuses or multipole circuit-breakers at a position adjacent to the battery compartment.

Overcurrent protection may be omitted for the circuit to the starter motors when the current drawn is so large that is impracticable to obtain short-circuit protection.

7.11.2 Emergency batteries supplying essential services are to have short-circuit protection only.

7.12 Protection of shore power connection

7.12.1 Permanently fixed cables connecting the shore connection box to the main switchboard are to be protected by fuses or circuit-breakers (see [3.8.4]).

7.13 Protection of measuring instruments, pilot lamps and control circuits

7.13.1 Measuring circuits and devices (voltage transformers, voltmeters, voltage coils of measuring instruments, insulation monitoring devices etc.) and pilot lamps are to be protected against short-circuit by means of multipole circuit-breakers or fuses.

The protective devices are to be placed as near as possible to the tapping from the supply.

The secondary side of current transformers is not to be protected.

7.13.2 Control circuits and control transformers are to be protected against overload and short-circuit by means of multipole circuit-breakers or fuses on each pole not connected to earth.

Overload protection may be omitted for transformers with a rated current of less than 2 A on the secondary side.

The short-circuit protection on the secondary side may be omitted if the transformer is designed to sustain permanent short-circuit current.

7.13.3 Where a fault in a pilot lamp would impair the operation of essential services, such lamps are to be protected separately from other circuits such as control circuits.

Note 1: Pilot lamps connected via short-circuit-proof transformers may be protected in common with control circuits.

7.13.4 Circuits whose failure could endanger operation, such as steering gear control feeder circuits, are to be protected only against short-circuit.

7.13.5 The protection is to be adequate for the minimum cross-section of the protected circuits.

7.14 Protection of transformers

7.14.1 The primary winding side of power transformers is to be protected against short-circuit and overload by means of multipole circuit-breakers or switches and fuses.

Overload protection on the primary side may be dispensed with where it is provided on the secondary side or when the total possible load cannot reach the rated power of the transformer.

7.14.2 The protection against short-circuit is to be such as to ensure the selectivity between the circuits supplied by the secondary side of the transformer and the feeder circuit of the transformer.

7.14.3 When transformers are arranged to operate in parallel, means are to be provided so as to trip the switch on the secondary winding side when the corresponding switch on the primary side is open.

8 System components

8.1 General

8.1.1 The components of the electrical system are to be dimensioned such as to withstand the currents that can pass through them during normal service without their rating being exceeded.

8.1.2 The components of the electrical system are to be designed and constructed so as to withstand for the admissible duration the thermal and electrodynamic stresses caused by possible overcurrents, including short-circuit.

9 Electrical cables

9.1 General

9.1.1 *All electrical cables and wiring external to equipment shall be at least of a flame-retardant type,* in accordance with IEC Publication 60332-1.

9.1.2 In addition to the provisions of [9.1.1], when cables are laid in bundles, cable types are to be chosen in compliance with IEC Publication 60332-3 Category A, or other means (see Sec 12) are to be provided such as not to impair their original flame-retarding properties.

9.1.3 Where necessary for specific applications such as radio frequency or digital communication systems, which require the use of particular types of cables, the Society may permit the use of cables which do not comply with the provisions of [9.1.1] and [9.1.2].

9.1.4

Cables which are required to have fire-resisting characteristics are to comply with the requirements stipulated in [9.6].

9.2 Choice of insulation

9.2.1 The maximum rated operating temperature of the insulating material is to be at least 10°C higher than the maximum ambient temperature liable to occur or to be produced in the space where the cable is installed.

9.2.2 The maximum rated conductor temperature for normal and short-circuit operation, for the type of insulating compounds normally used for shipboard cables, is not to exceed the values stated in Tab 4. Special consideration will be given to other insulating materials.

9.2.3 PVC insulated cables are not to be used either in refrigerated spaces, or on decks exposed to the weather of ships classed for unrestricted service.

9.2.4 Mineral insulated cables will be considered on a case by case basis.

9.3 Choice of protective covering

9.3.1 The conductor insulating materials are to be enclosed in an impervious sheath of material appropriate to the expected ambient conditions where cables are installed in the following locations:

- on decks exposed to the weather,
- in damp or wet spaces (e.g. in bathrooms),
- in refrigerated spaces,
- in machinery spaces and, in general,
- where condensation water or harmful vapour may be present.

9.3.2 Where cables are provided with armour or metallic braid (e.g. for cables installed in hazardous areas), an overall impervious sheath or other means to protect the metallic elements against corrosion is to be provided; see Sec 9, [1.5].

9.3.3 An impervious sheath is not required for single-core cables installed in tubes or ducts inside accommodation spaces, in circuits with maximum system voltage 250 V.

9.3.4 In choosing different types of protective coverings, due consideration is to be given to the mechanical action to which each cable may be subjected during installation and in service.

If the mechanical strength of the protective covering is considered insufficient, the cables are to be mechanically protected (e.g. by an armour or by installation inside pipes or conduits).

9.3.5 Single-core cables for a.c. circuits with rated current exceeding 20 A are to be either non-armoured or armoured with non-magnetic material.

9.4 Cables in refrigerated spaces

9.4.1 Cables installed in refrigerated spaces are to have a watertight or impervious sheath and are to be protected against mechanical damage. If an armour is applied on the sheath, the armour is to be protected against corrosion by a further moisture-resisting covering.

9.5 Cables in areas with a risk of explosion

9.5.1 For cables in areas with a risk of explosion, see [10].

9.6 Electrical services required to be operable under fire conditions and fire-resistant cables

9.6.1

Electrical services required to be operable under fire conditions are as follows:

- Control and power systems to power-operated fire doors and status indication for all fire doors
- Control and power systems to power-operated watertight doors and their status indication
- Emergency fire pump
- Emergency lighting
- Fire and general alarms
- Fire detection systems
- Fire-extinguishing systems and fire-extinguishing media release alarms
- Low location lighting
- Public address systems
- Remote emergency stop/shutdown arrangements for systems which may support the propagation of fire and/or explosion.

9.6.2 *(1/1/2016)*

Where cables for services specified in [9.6.1] including their power supplies pass through high fire risk areas (see Note 1), and in addition for passenger ships, main vertical fire zones, other than those which they serve, they are to be so arranged that a fire in any of these areas or zones does not affect the operation of the service in any other area or zone. This may be achieved by either of the following measures:

a) Cables being of a fire-resistant type complying with IEC 60331-1 for cables of greater than 20 mm overall diameter, otherwise IEC 60331-21 or IEC 60331-2 for cables with an overall diameter not exceeding 20 mm, are installed and run continuous to keep the fire integrity within the high fire risk area (see Fig 3).

b) At least two loops/radial distributions run as widely apart as is practicable and so arranged that in the event of damage by fire at least one of the loops/radial distributions remains operational.

Systems that are, fail safe or duplicated with cable runs as widely separated as is practicable may be exempted.

Note 1:

a) For the purpose of application of this item [9.6], the definition of "high fire risk areas" is the following:

(1) Machinery spaces as defined by Chapter 4, except spaces having little or no fire risk as defined by paragraph (10) of Chap. II-2 / Reg. 9.2.2.3.2.2 of SOLAS (including the interpretations for tables 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7 and 9.8 given in MSC/Circ.1120)

(2) Spaces containing fuel treatment equipment and other highly flammable substances

(3) Galley and Pantries containing cooking appliances

(4) Laundry containing drying equipment

(5) Spaces as defined by paragraphs (8), (12), and (14) of Chap. II-2 / Reg. 9.2.2.3.2.2 of SOLAS for ships carrying more than 36 passengers;

b) Fire-resistant type cables are to be easily distinguishable.

c) For special cables, requirements in the following standards may be used:

(1) IEC60331-23: Procedures and requirements - Electric data cables

(2) IEC60331-25: Procedures and requirements - Optical fibre cables.

9.6.3 *(1/1/2016)*

The electrical cables to the emergency fire pump are not to pass through the machinery spaces containing the main fire pumps and their source(s) of power and prime mover(s).

They are to be of a fire resistant type, in accordance with [9.6.2] a), where they pass through other high fire risk areas.

9.7 Cables for submerged bilge pumps

9.7.1 Cables and their connections to such pumps are to be capable of operating under a head of water equal to their distance below the bulkhead deck. The cable is to be impervious-sheathed and armoured, is to be installed in continuous lengths from above the bulkhead to the motor terminals and is to enter the air bell from the bottom.

9.8 Internal wiring of switchboards and other enclosures for equipment

9.8.1 For installation in switchboards and other enclosures for equipment, single-core cables may be used without further protection (sheath).

Other types of flame-retardant switchboard wiring may be accepted at the discretion of the Society.

9.9 Current carrying capacity of cables

9.9.1 The current carrying capacity for continuous service of cables given in Tab 5 to Tab 9 is based on the maximum permissible service temperature of the conductor also indicated therein and on an ambient temperature of 45°C.

9.9.2 The current carrying capacity cited in [9.9.1] is applicable, with rough approximation, to all types of protective covering (e.g. both armoured and non-armoured cables).

9.9.3 Values other than those shown in Tab 5 to Tab 9 may be accepted provided they are determined on the basis of calculation methods or experimental values approved by the Society.

9.9.4 When the actual ambient temperature obviously differs from 45°C, the correction factors shown in Tab 10 may be applied to the current carrying capacity in Tab 5 to Tab 9.

9.9.5 Where more than six cables are bunched together in such a way that there is an absence of free air circulating around them, and the cables can be expected to be under full load simultaneously, a correction factor of 0,85 is to be applied.

Figure 3

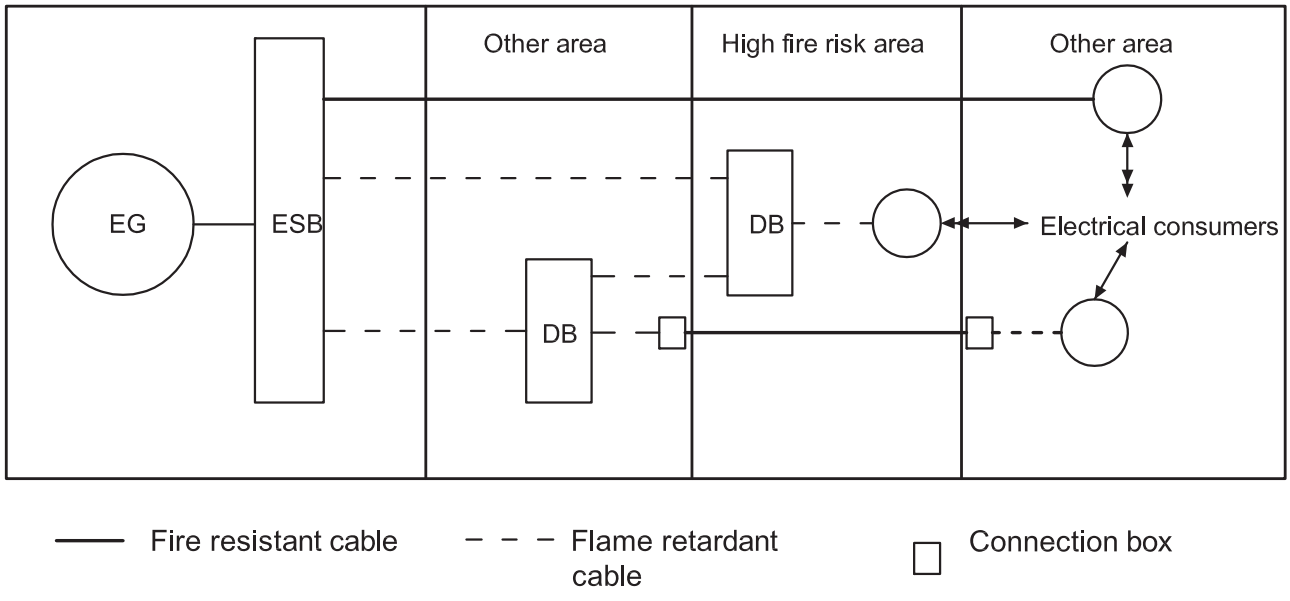


Table 4 : Maximum rated conductor temperature

Type of insulating compound	Abbreviated designation	Maximum rated conductor temperature, in °C	
		Normal operation	Short-circuit
a) Thermoplastic:			
- based upon polyvinyl chloride or copolymer of vinyl chloride and vinyl acetate	PVC/A	60	150
b) Elastomeric or thermosetting:			
- based upon ethylene-propylene rubber or similar (EPM or EPDM)	EPR	85	250
- based upon high modulus or hardgrade ethylene propylene rubber	HEPR	85	250
- based upon cross-linked polyethylene	XLPE	85	250
- based upon rubber silicon	S 95	95	350
- based upon ethylene-propylene rubber or similar (EPM or EPDM) halogen free	HF EPR	85	250
- based upon high modulus or hardgrade halogen free ethylene propylene rubber	HF HEPR	85	250
- based upon cross-linked polyethylene halogen free	HF XLPE	85	250
- based upon rubber silicon halogen free	HF S 95	95	350
- based upon cross-linked polyolefin material for halogen free cable **(1)**	HF 85	85	250
(1) Used on sheathed cable only			

Table 5 : Current carrying capacity, in A in continuous service for cables based on maximum conductor operating temperature of 60°C (ambient temperature 45°C)

Nominal section mm^2	Number of conductors		
	1	2	3 or 4
1	8	7	6
1,5	12	10	8
2,5	17	14	12
4	22	19	15
6	29	25	20
10	40	34	28
16	54	46	38
25	71	60	50
35	87	74	61
50	105	89	74
70	135	115	95
95	165	140	116
120	190	162	133
150	220	187	154
185	250	213	175
240	290	247	203
300	335	285	235

Table 6 : Current carrying capacity, in A in continuous service for cables based on maximum conductor operating temperature of 75°C (ambient temperature 45°C)

Nominal section mm^2	Number of conductors		
	1	2	3 or 4
1	13	11	9
1,5	17	14	12
2,5	24	20	17
4	32	27	22
6	41	35	29
10	57	48	40
16	76	65	53
25	100	85	70
35	125	106	88
50	150	128	105
70	190	162	133
95	230	196	161
120	270	230	189
150	310	264	217
185	350	298	245
240	415	353	291
300	475	404	333

Table 7 : Current carrying capacity, in A in continuous service for cables based on maximum conductor operating temperature of 80°C (ambient temperature 45°C)

Nominal section mm^2	Number of conductors		
	1	2	3 or 4
1	15	13	11
1,5	19	16	13
2,5	26	22	18
4	35	30	25
6	45	38	32
10	63	54	44
16	84	71	59
25	110	94	77
35	140	119	98
50	165	140	116
70	215	183	151
95	260	221	182
120	300	255	210
150	340	289	238
185	390	332	273
240	460	391	322
300	530	450	371

Table 8 : Current carrying capacity, in A in continuous service for cables based on maximum conductor operating temperature of 85°C (ambient temperature 45°C)

Nominal section mm^2	Number of conductors		
	1	2	3 or 4
1	16	14	11
1,5	20	17	14
2,5	28	24	20
4	38	32	27
6	48	41	34
10	67	57	47
16	90	77	63
25	120	102	84
35	145	123	102
50	180	153	126
70	225	191	158
95	275	234	193
120	320	272	224
150	365	310	256
185	415	353	291
240	490	417	343
300	560	476	392

Table 9 : Current carrying capacity, in A in continuous service for cables based on maximum conductor operating temperature of 95°C (ambient temperature 45°C)

Nominal section mm^2	Number of conductors		
	1	2	3 or 4
1	20	17	14
1,5	24	20	17
2,5	32	27	22
4	42	36	29
6	55	47	39
10	75	64	53
16	100	85	70
25	135	115	95
35	165	140	116
50	200	170	140
70	255	217	179
95	310	264	217
120	360	306	252
150	410	349	287
185	470	400	329
240	570	485	399
300	660	560	462

9.9.6 Where a cable is intended to supply a short-time load for 1/2-hour or 1-hour service (e.g. mooring winches or bow thruster propellers), the current carrying capacity obtained from Tab 5 to Tab 9 may be increased by applying the corresponding correction factors given in Tab 11.

In no case is a period shorter than 1/2-hour to be used, whatever the effective period of operation.

9.9.7 For supply cables to single services for intermittent loads (e.g. cargo winches or machinery space cranes), the current carrying capacity obtained from Tab 5 to Tab 9 may be increased by applying the correction factors given in Tab 12.

The correction factors are calculated with rough approximation for periods of 10 minutes, of which 4 minutes with a constant load and 6 minutes without load.

9.10 Minimum nominal cross-sectional area of conductors

9.10.1 In general the minimum allowable conductor cross-sectional areas are those given in Tab 13.

9.10.2 The nominal cross-sectional area of the neutral conductor in three-phase distribution systems is to be equal to at least 50% of the cross-sectional area of the phases, unless the latter is less than or equal to 16 mm^2. In such case the cross-sectional area of the neutral conductor is to be equal to that of the phase.

9.10.3 For the nominal cross-sectional area of:

- earthing conductors, see Sec 12, [2.3]
- earthing connections for distribution systems, see Sec 12, [2.5].

9.11 Choice of cables

9.11.1 The rated voltage of any cable is to be not lower than the nominal voltage of the circuit for which it is used.

9.11.2 The nominal cross-sectional area of each cable is to be sufficient to satisfy the following conditions with reference to the maximum anticipated ambient temperature:

- the current carrying capacity is to be not less than the highest continuous load carried by the cable
- the voltage drop in the circuit, by full load on this circuit, is not to exceed the specified limits
- the cross-sectional area calculated on the basis of the above is to be such that the temperature increases which may be caused by overcurrents or starting transients do not damage the insulation.

9.11.3 The highest continuous load carried by a cable is to be calculated on the basis of the power requirements and of the diversity factor of the loads and machines supplied through that cable.

9.11.4 When the conductors are carrying the maximum nominal service current, the voltage drop from the main or emergency switchboard busbars to any point in the installation is not to exceed 6% of the nominal voltage.

For battery circuits with supply voltage less than 55 V, this value may be increased to 10%.

For the circuits of navigation lights, the voltage drop is not to exceed 5% of the rated voltage under normal conditions.

Table 10 : Correction factors for various ambient air temperatures

Maximum conductor temperature, in °C	Correction factors for ambient air temperature of :										
	35°C	40°C	45°C	50°C	55°C	60°C	65°C	70°C	75°C	80°C	85°C
60	1,29	1,15	1,00	0,82	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
75	1,15	1,08	1,00	0,91	0,82	0,71	0,58	-	-	-	-
80	1,13	1,07	1,00	0,93	0,85	0,76	0,65	0,53	-	-	-
85	1,12	1,06	1,00	0,94	0,87	0,79	0,71	0,61	0,50	-	-
95	1,10	1,05	1,00	0,95	0,89	0,84	0,77	0,71	0,63	0,55	0,45

Table 11 : Correction factors for short-time loads

½ -hour service		1-hour service		
Sum of nominal cross-sectional areas of all conductors in the cable, in mm^2		Sum of nominal cross-sectional areas of all conductors in the cable, in mm^2		Correlation factor
Cables with metallic sheath and armoured cables	Cables with non-metallic sheath and non-armoured cables	Cables with metallic sheath and armoured cables	Cables with non-metallic sheath and non-armoured cables	
up to 20	up to 75	up to 80	up to 230	1,06
21-41	76-125	81-170	231-400	1,10
41-65	126-180	171-250	401-600	1,15
66-95	181-250	251-430	601-800	1,20
96-135	251-320	431-600	-	1,25
136-180	321-400	601-800	-	1,30
181-235	401-500	-	-	1,35
236-285	501-600	-	-	1,40
286-350	-	-	-	1,45

Table 12 : Correction factors for intermittent service

Sun of nominal cross selectionel areas of all conductors in the cable, in mm^2		Correction factor
Cables with metallic sheath and armoured cables	Cables without metallic sheath and non-amoured cables	
	$S \leq 5$	1,10
	$5 < S \leq 8$	1,15
	$8 < S \leq 16$	1,20
$S \leq 4$	$16 < S \leq 825$	1,25
$4 < S \leq 7$	$25 < S \leq 42$	1,30
$7 < S \leq 17$	$42 < S \leq 72$	1,35
$17 < S \leq 42$	$72 < S \leq 140$	1,40
$42 < S \leq 110$	$140 < S$	1,45
$110 < S$	-	1,50

10 Electrical installations in hazardous areas

10.1 Electrical equipment

10.1.1 No electrical equipment is to be installed in hazardous areas unless the Society is satisfied that such equipment is:

- essential for operational purposes,
- of a type which will not ignite the mixture concerned,
- appropriate to the space concerned, and
- appropriately certified for safe usage in the dusts, vapours or gases likely to be encountered.

10.1.2 Where electrical equipment of a safe type is permitted in hazardous areas it is to be selected with due consideration to the following:

a) risk of explosive dust concentration; see Sec 2, [6.2]:
   - degree of protection of the enclosure
   - maximum surface temperature

b) risk of explosive gas atmosphere; see Sec 2, [6.1]:
   - explosion group
   - temperature class.

10.1.3 Where electrical equipment is permitted in hazardous areas, all switches and protective devices are to interrupt all poles or phases and, where practicable, to be located in a non-hazardous area unless specifically permitted otherwise.

Such switches and equipment located in hazardous areas are to be suitably labelled for identification purposes.

10.1.4 For electrical equipment installed in Zone 0 hazardous areas, only the following types are permitted:

- certified intrinsically-safe apparatus Ex(ia)
- simple electrical apparatus and components (e.g. thermocouples, photocells, strain gauges, junction boxes, switching devices), included in intrinsically-safe circuits of category “ia” not capable of storing or generating electrical power or energy in excess of limits stated in the relevant rules, and accepted by the appropriate authority
- equipment specifically designed and certified by the appropriate authority for use in Zone 0.

Table 13 : Minimum nominal cross-sectional areas

Service	Nominal cross-sectional area	
	external wiring mm^2	internal wiring mm^2
Power, heating and lighting systems	1,0	1,0
Control circuits for power plant	1,0	1,0
Control circuits other than those for power plant	0,75	0,5
Control circuits for telecommunications, measurement, alarms	0,5	0,2
Telephone and bell equipment, not required for the safety of the ship or crew calls	0,2	0,1
Bus and data cables	0,2	0,1

10.1.5 For electrical equipment installed in Zone 1 hazardous areas, only the following types are permitted:

- any type that may be considered for Zone 0
- certified intrinsically-safe apparatus Ex(ib)
- simple electrical apparatus and components (e.g. thermocouples, photocells, strain gauges, junction boxes, switching devices), included in intrinsically-safe circuits of category "ib" not capable of storing or generating electrical power or energy in excess of limits stated in the relevant rules, and accepted by the appropriate authority
- certified flameproof Ex(d)
- certified pressurised Ex(p)
- certified increased safety Ex(e)
- certified encapsulated Ex(m)
- certified sand filled Ex(q)
- certified specially Ex(s)
- through runs of cable.

10.1.6 For electrical equipment installed in Zone 2 hazardous areas, only the following types are permitted:

- any type that may be considered for Zone 1
- tested specially for Zone 2 (e.g. type "n" protection)
- pressurised, and accepted by the appropriate authority
- encapsulated, and accepted by the appropriate authority
- the type which ensures the absence of sparks and arcs and of "hot spots" during its normal operation (minimum class of protection IP55).

10.1.7 When apparatus incorporates a number of types of protection, it is to be ensured that all are suitable for use in the zone in which it is located.

10.2 Electrical cables

10.2.1 Electrical cables are not to be installed in hazardous areas except as specifically permitted or when associated with intrinsically safe circuits.

10.2.2

All cables installed in Zone 0, Zone 1 and weather exposed areas classified Zone 2 are to be sheathed with at least one of the following:

a) a non-metallic impervious sheath in combination with braiding or other metallic covering

b) a copper or stainless steel sheath (for mineral insulated cables only).

10.2.3 All cables installed in non-weather exposed Zone 2 areas are to be provided with at least a non-metallic external impervious sheath.

10.2.4 Cables of intrinsically safe circuits are to have a metallic shielding with at least a non-metallic external impervious sheath.

10.2.5 The circuits of a category "ib" intrinsically safe system are not to be contained in a cable associated with a category "ia" intrinsically safe system required for a hazardous area in which only category "ia" systems are permitted.

10.3 Electrical installations in battery rooms

10.3.1

Only intrinsically safe apparatus and certified safe type lighting fittings may be installed in compartments assigned solely to large vented storage batteries; see Sec 11, [6.2.1].

The associated switches are to be installed outside such spaces.

Electric ventilator motors are to be outside ventilation ducts and, if within 3 m of the exhaust end of the duct, they are to be of an explosion-proof safe type. The impeller of the fan is to be of the non-sparking type.

Overcurrent protective devices are to be installed as close as possible to, but outside of, battery rooms.

Electrical cables other than those pertaining to the equipment arranged in battery rooms are not permitted.

Electrical equipment for use in battery rooms is to have minimum explosion group IIC and temperature class T1.

10.3.2 Standard marine electrical equipment may be installed in compartments assigned solely to valve-regulated sealed storage batteries.

10.3.3

Where vented (see Note 1) type batteries replace valve-regulated sealed (see Note 2) types, the requirements of Sec 11 are to be complied with.

Note 1: A vented battery is one in which the cells have a cover provided with an opening through which products of electrolysis and

evaporation are allowed to escape freely from the cells to atmosphere.

Note 2: A valve-regulated battery is one in which cells are closed but have an arrangement (valve) which allows the escape of gas if the internal pressure exceeds a predetermined value.

10.4 Electrical equipment allowed in paint stores and in enclosed spaces leading to paint stores

10.4.1

Electrical equipment is to be installed in paint stores and in ventilation ducts serving such spaces only when it is essential for operational services

Certified safe type equipment of the following type is acceptable:

a) intrinsically safe Exi

b) flameproof Exd

c) pressurised Exp

d) increased safety Exe

e) special protection Exs

Cables (through-runs or terminating cables) of armoured type or installed in metallic conduits are to be used.

10.4.2

The minimum requirements for certified safe type equipment are as follows:

- explosion group II B
- temperature class T3.

10.4.3

Switches, protective devices and motor control gear of electrical equipment installed in a paint store are to interrupt all poles or phases and are preferably to be located in a non-hazardous space.

10.4.4

In areas on open deck within 1m of inlet and exhaust ventilation openings or within 3 m of exhaust mechanical ventilation outlets, the following electrical equipment may be installed:

- electrical equipment with the type of protection as permitted in paint stores or
- equipment of protection class Exn or
- appliances which do not generate arcs in service and whose surface does not reach unacceptably high temperature or
- appliances with simplified pressurised enclosures or vapour-proof enclosures (minimum class of protection IP55) whose surface does not reach unacceptably high temperature
- cables as specified in [10.4.1].

10.4.5

The enclosed spaces giving access to the paint store may be considered as non-hazardous, provided that :

- the door to the paint store is a gas-tight door with self-closing devices without holding back arrangements
- the paint store is provided with an acceptable, independent, natural ventilation system ventilated from a safe area
- warning notices are fitted adjacent to the paint store entrance stating that the store contains flammable liquids.

Note 1: The paint stores and inlet and exhaust ventilation ducts under 10.4.4 are classified as Zone 1 and areas on open deck under 10.4.4 as Zone 2, as defined in IEC standard 60092-502, Electrical Installation in ships-part 502: Tankers-special features.

Note 2: A watertight door may be considered as being gas-tight.

10.5 Electrical installations in stores for welding gas (acetylene) bottles

10.5.1 The following equipment may be installed in stores for welding gas bottles provided that it is of a safe type appropriate for Zone 1 area installation:

- lighting fittings
- ventilator motors where provided.

10.5.2 Electrical cables other than those pertaining to the equipment arranged in stores for welding gas bottles are not permitted.

10.5.3 Electrical equipment for use in stores for welding gas bottles is to have minimum explosion group IIC and temperature class T2.

10.6 Special ships

10.6.1 For installations in hazardous areas in:

- oil tankers, chemical tankers and liquefied gas carriers, see Pt E, Ch 7, Sec 5, Pt E, Ch 8, Sec 10 or Pt E, Ch 9, Sec 10
- ships arranged with spaces for the carriage of vehicles, see Pt E, Ch 1, Sec 4 or Pt E, Ch 12, Sec 4.

11 Recording of the Type, Location and Maintenance Cycle of Batteries

11.1 Battery schedule

11.1.1

Where batteries are fitted for use for essential and emergency services, a schedule of such batteries is to be compiled and maintained. The schedule, required in Sec 1, Tab 1, is to include at least the following information regarding the battery(ies):

- type and Manufacturer's type designation
- voltage and ampere-hour rating
- location
- equipment and/or system(s) served
- maintenance/replacement cycle dates
- date(s) of last maintenance and/or replacement
- for replacement batteries in storage, the date of manufacture and shelf life.

Note 1: Shelf life is the duration of storage under specified conditions at the end of which a battery retains the ability to give a specified performance.

SECTION 4 ROTATING MACHINES

1 Constructional and operational requirements for generators and motors

1.1 Mechanical construction

1.1.1

Insulating materials, insulated windings and construction of electrical machines are to conform to the relevant requirements of Sec 2, [4] and Sec 2, [5].

1.1.2 Shafts are to be made of material complying with the provisions of Pt D, Ch 2, Sec 3 or, where rolled products are allowed in place of forgings, with those of Pt D, Ch 2, Sec 1.

1.1.3 Where welded parts are foreseen on shafts and rotors, the provisions of Part D, Chapter 5 are to apply.

1.1.4 Sleeve bearings are to be efficiently and automatically lubricated at all running speeds.

Provision is to be made for preventing the lubricant from gaining access to windings or other insulated or bare current carrying parts.

1.1.5 Means are to be provided to prevent bearings from being damaged by the flow of currents circulating between them and the shaft. According to the Manufacturer's requirements, electrical insulation of at least one bearing is to be considered.

1.1.6 For surface-cooled machines with an external fan installed on the open deck, adequate protection of the fan against icing is to be provided.

1.1.7 When liquid cooling is used, the coolers are to be so arranged as to avoid entry of water into the machine, whether by leakage or condensation in the heat exchanger, and provision is to be made for the detection of leakage.

1.1.8

Motors cooled with a water jacket can be accepted for both propulsion and auxiliary services, however the use of water jacket cooled electric motors for propulsion is limited to installations with motor redundancy.

In motors cooled with a water jacket, internal water leakage sensors are to be provided.

The water jacket is to be pressure tested at not less than 1,5 times the working pressure after final machining.

1.1.9 Rotating machines whose ventilation or lubrication system efficiency depends on the direction of rotation are to be provided with a warning plate.

1.2 Sliprings, commutators and brushes

1.2.1 Sliprings and commutators with their brushgear are to be so constructed that undue arcing is avoided under all normal load conditions.

1.2.2 The working position of brushgear is to be clearly and permanently marked.

1.2.3 Sliprings, commutators and brushgear are to be readily accessible for inspection, repairs and maintenance.

1.3 Terminal connectors

1.3.1 Suitable, fixed terminal connectors are to be provided in an accessible position for connection of the external cables.

1.3.2 All terminal connectors are to be clearly identified with reference to a diagram.

1.3.3 The degree of protection of terminal boxes is to be adequate to that of the machine.

1.4 Electrical insulation

1.4.1 Insulating materials for windings and other current carrying parts are to comply with the requirements of Sec 2, [4.2] and Sec 2, [4.3].

2 Special requirements for generators

2.1 Prime movers, speed governors and overspeed protection

2.1.1 Prime movers for generators are to comply with the relevant requirements of Ch 1, Sec 2, [4.7].

2.1.2 When generators are to operate in parallel, the characteristics of speed governors are to comply with the provisions of [2.2].

2.2 A.c. generators

2.2.1 Alternators are to be so constructed that, when started up, they take up the voltage without the aid of an external electrical power source.

Where these provisions are not complied with, the external electrical power source is to be constituted by a battery installation in accordance with the requirements for electrical starting systems of auxiliary machinery (see Ch 1, Sec 2).

2.2.2 The voltage wave form is to be approximately sinusoidal, with a maximum deviation from the sinusoidal fundamental curve of 5% of the peak value.

2.2.3 Each alternator is to be provided with automatic means of voltage regulation.

2.2.4 For a.c. generating sets operating in parallel, the governing characteristics of the prime movers are to be such that, within the limits of 20% and 100% total load, the load on any generating set will not normally differ from its proportionate share of the total load by more than 15% of the rated power in kW of the largest machine or 25% of the rated power in kW of the individual machine in question, whichever is the lesser.

2.2.5 For a.c. generating sets intended to operate in parallel, means are to be provided to regulate the governor so as to permit an adjustment of load not exceeding 5% of the rated load at normal frequency.

2.2.6 When a.c. generators are operated in parallel, the reactive loads of the individual generating sets are not to differ from their proportionate share of the total reactive load by more than 10% of the rated reactive power of the largest machine, or 25% of that of the smallest machine, whichever is the lesser.

3 Testing of rotating machines

3.1 General

3.1.1

All machines are to be tested by the Manufacturer

3.1.2

Manufacturer's test records are to be provided for machines for essential services, for other machines they are to be available upon request.

3.1.3

All tests are to be carried out according to IEC 60092-301.

3.1.4

All a.c. generators having rated power of 100 kVA and above, all d.c. generators having rated power of 100 kW and above, and all a.c./d.c. motors having rated power of 100 kW and above, intended for essential services are to be surveyed by the Society during testing and, if appropriate, during manufacturing.

Note 1: An alternative inspection scheme may be agreed by the Society with the Manufacturer whereby the attendance of the Surveyor will not be required as indicated above.

3.2 Shaft material

3.2.1

Shaft material for electric propulsion motors and for main engine driven generators where the shaft is part of the propulsion shafting is to be certified by the Society.

3.2.2

Shaft material for other machines is to be in accordance with recognised international or national standards (See [1.1.2]).

3.3 Tests

3.3.1

Type tests are to be carried out on a prototype machine or on the first of a batch of machines, and routine tests carried out on subsequent machines in accordance with Tab 1.

Note 1: Test requirements may differ for shaft generators, special purpose machines and machines of novel construction.

Table 1 : Tests to be carried out on electrical rotating machines

No.	Tests	a.c. Generators		Motors	
		Type test **(1)**	Routine test **(2)**	Type test **(1)**	Routine test **(2)**
1	Examination of the technical documentation, as appropriate, and visual inspection	X	X	X	X
2	Insulation resistance measurement	X	X	X	X
3	Winding resistance measurement	X	X	X	X
4	Verification of the voltage regulation system	X	X **(3)**		
5	Rated load test and temperature rise measurement	X		X	
6	Overload/overcurrent test	X	X **(4)**	X	X **(4)**
7	Verification of steady short-circuit conditions **(5)**	X			
8	Overspeed test	X	X	X **(6)**	X **(6)**
9	Dielectric strength test	X	X	X	X
10	No load test	X	X	X	X
11	Verification of degree of protection	X		X	

No.	Tests	a.c. Generators		Motors	
		Type test **(1)**	Routine test **(2)**	Type test **(1)**	Routine test **(2)**
12	Verification of bearings	X	X	X	X

(1) Type tests on prototype machine or tests on at least the first of a batch of machines.
(2) The report on routinely tested machines is to contain the Manufacturer's serial number of the machine which has been type tested and the test result.
(3) Only functional test of voltage regulator system.
(4) Only applicable for machine of essential services rated above 100kW/kVA.
(5) Verification of steady short circuit condition applies to synchronous generators only.
(6) Not applicable for squirrel cage motors.

Table 2 : Minimum insulation resistance

Rated voltage U_n, in V	Minimum test voltage, in V	Minimum insulation resistance, in MΩ
$U_n = 250$	$2\ U_n$	1
$250 < U_n \leq 1000$	500	1
$1000 < U_n \leq 7200$	1000	$U_n/1000 + 1$
$7200 < U_n \leq 15000$	5000	$U_n/1000 + 1$

4 Description of the test

4.1 Examination of the technical documentation, as appropriate, and visual inspection

4.1.1 Examination of the technical documentation

Technical documentation of machines rated at 100kW (kVA) and over is to be available for examination by the Surveyor.

4.1.2 Visual inspection

A visual examination of the machine is to be made to ensure, as far as is practicable, that it complies with the technical documentation.

4.2 Insulation resistance measurement

4.2.1

Immediately after the high voltage tests the insulation resistances are to be measured using a direct current insulation tester between:

a) all current carrying parts connected together and earth,

b) all current carrying parts of different polarity or phase, where both ends of each polarity or phase are individually accessible.

The minimum values of test voltages and corresponding insulation resistances are given in Tab 2. The insulation resistance is to be measured close to the operating temperature, or an appropriate method of calculation is to be used.

4.3 Winding resistance measurement

4.3.1

The resistances of the machine windings are to be measured and recorded using an appropriate bridge method or voltage and current method.

4.4 Verification of the voltage regulation system

4.4.1 *(1/1/2017)*

The alternating current generator, together with its voltage regulation system, at all loads from no load running to full load, is to be able to keep the rated voltage at the rated power factor under steady conditions within ± 2.5%. These limits may be increased to ± 3.5% for emergency sets.

4.4.2

When the generator is driven at rated speed, giving its rated voltage, and is subjected to a sudden change of symmetrical load within the limits of specified current and power factor, the voltage is not to fall below 85% nor exceed 120% of the rated voltage

4.4.3

The voltage of the generator is then to be restored to within plus or minus 3% of the rated voltage for the main generator sets in not more than 1.5 s. For emergency sets, these values may be increased to plus or minus 4% in not more than 5 s.

4.4.4 *(1/1/2017)*

In the absence of precise information concerning the maximum values of the sudden loads, the following conditions may be assumed: 60% of the rated current with a power factor of between 0.4 lagging and zero to be suddenly switched on with the generator running at no load, and then switched off after steady - state conditions have been reached. Subject to Classification Society's approval, such voltage regulation during transient conditions may be cal-

culated values based on the previous type test records, and need not to be tested during factory testing of a generator.

4.5 Rated load test and temperature rise measurements

4.5.1

The temperature rises are to be measured at the rated output, voltage and frequency and for the duty for which the machine is rated and marked in accordance with the testing methods specified in IEC 60034-1, or by means of a combination of other tests.

The limits of temperature rise are those specified in Table 6 of IEC 60034-1 adjusted as necessary for the ambient reference temperatures specified in Sec 2.

4.6 Overload/overcurrent tests

4.6.1

Overload test is to be carried out as a type test for generators as proof of overload capability of generators and the excitation system, for motors as proof of momentary excess torque as required in IEC 60034-1. The overload test can be replaced at a routine test by an overcurrent test. The overcurrent test is to be proof of the current capability of the windings, wires, connections etc. of each machine. The overcurrent test can be performed at reduced speed (motors) or at short-circuit (generators).

4.6.2

In the case of machines for special uses (e.g. for windlasses), overload values other than the above may be considered.

4.7 Verification of steady short-circuit conditions

4.7.1 *(1/1/2017)*

It is to be verified that under steady state short-circuit conditions, the generator with its voltage regulating system is capable of maintaining, without sustaining any damage, a current of at least three times the rated current for a duration of at least 2 s or, where precise data is available, for a duration of any time delay which may be fitted in a tripping device for discrimination purposes.

In order to provide sufficient information to the party responsible for determining the discrimination settings in the distribution system where the generator is going to be used, the generator manufacturer shall provide documentation showing the transient behaviour of the short circuit current upon a sudden short-circuit occurring when excited, and running at nominal speed. The influence of the automatic voltage regulator shall be taken into account, and the setting parameters for the voltage regulator shall be noted together with the decrement curve. Such a decrement curve shall be available when the setting of the distribution system's short-circuit protection is calculated. The decrement curve need not be based on physical testing. The manufacturers simulation model for the generator and the voltage regulator may be used where this has been validated through the previous type test on the same model.

4.8 Overspeed test

4.8.1

Machines are to withstand the overspeed test as specified in IEC 60034-1. This test is not applicable for squirrel cage motors.

4.9 Dielectric strength test

4.9.1

New and completed rotating machines are to withstand a dielectric test as specified in IEC 60034-1.

4.9.2

For high voltage machines an impulse test is to be carried out on the coils according to Sec 13.

4.9.3

When it is necessary to perform an additional high voltage test, this is to be carried out after any further drying, with a test voltage of 80% of that specified in IEC 60034-1.

4.9.4

Completely rewound windings of used machines are to be tested with the full test voltage applied in the case of new machines.

4.9.5

Partially rewound windings are to be tested at 75% of the test voltage required for new machines. Prior to the test, the old part of the winding is to be carefully cleaned and dried.

4.9.6

Following cleaning and drying, overhauled machines are to be subjected to a test at a voltage equal to 1,5 times the rated voltage, with a minimum of 500 V if the rated voltage is less than 100 V, and with a minimum of 1000 V if the rated voltage is equal to or greater than 100 V.

4.9.7

A repetition of the high voltage test for groups of machines and apparatus is to be avoided if possible, but if a test on an assembled group of several pieces of new apparatus, each of which has previously passed its high voltage test, is performed, the test voltage to be applied to such assembled group is 80% of the lowest test voltage appropriate for any part of the group.

Note 1: For windings of one or more machines connected together electrically, the voltage to be considered is the maximum voltage that occurs in relation to earth.

4.10 No load test

4.10.1

Machines are to be operated at no load and rated speed whilst being supplied at rated voltage and frequency as a motor while generators are to be driven by a suitable means and excited to give rated terminal voltage.

During the running test, the vibration of the machine and operation of the bearing lubrication system, if appropriate, are to be checked.

4.11 Verification of degree of protection

4.11.1

As specified in IEC 60034-5.

4.12 Verification of bearings

4.12.1

Upon completion of the above tests, machines which have sleeve bearings are to be opened upon request for examination by the Surveyor, to establish that the shaft is correctly seated in the bearing shells.

5 Requirements for AC Generating sets

5.1 General

5.1.1 *(1/7/2020)*

This Section provides requirements for AC Generating sets (i.e. Reciprocating Internal Combustion engines[a), b)], alternators[c)] and couplings) in addition to those stated Ch 1, Sec 2; Ch 1, Sec 16; Ch 1, App 1 and Sec 4.

a) Reciprocating Internal Combustion engines are to comply with the requirements in Ch 1, Sec 2; Ch 1, Sec 16 and Ch 1, App 1.

b) The Reciprocating Internal Combustion engine speed governor and overspeed protective device are to comply with the requirements of Ch 1, Sec 2, [4.7.3] to [4.7.7].

c) Alternators are to comply with the requirements in Sec 4.

5.1.2 *(1/7/2020)*

The requirements are applicable to AC generating sets driven by reciprocating internal combustion engines irrespective of their types (i.e. diesel engine, dual fuel engine, gasfuel engine), except for those sets consisting of a propulsion engine which also drives power take off (PTO) generator(s).

5.2 Generating sets - requirements

5.2.1 *(1/7/2020)*

The generating set shall show torsional vibration levels which are compatible with the allowable limits for the alternator, shafts, coupling and damper.

5.2.2 *(1/7/2020)*

The coupling selection for the generating set shall take into account the stresses and torques imposed on it by the torsional vibration of the system. Where flexible couplings are adopted, the provisions of Ch 1, Sec 7, [2.5.4] b) and Ch 1, Sec 9, [3.6.3] are to be complied with. The torsional vibration calculations are to be submitted to the Society for approval when the engine power is 110 kW or above.

5.2.3 *(1/7/2020)*

The rated power shall be appropriate for the actual use of the generator set.

5.2.4 *(1/7/2020)*

The entity responsible of assembling the generating set shall install a rating plate marked with at least the following information:

(i) the generating set manufacturer's name or mark;

(ii) the set serial number;

(iii) the set date of manufacture (month/year);

(iv) the rated power (both in kW and KVA) with one of the prefixes COP, PRP (or, only for emergency Generating sets, LTP) as defined in ISO 8528-1:2018;

(v) the rated power factor;

(vi) the set rated frequency (Hz);

(vii) the set rated voltage (V Sec 4);

(viii) the set rated current (A);

(ix) the mass (kg).

SECTION 5 TRANSFORMERS

1 Constructional and operational requirements

1.1 Construction

1.1.1 Transformers, except those for motor starting, are to be double wound (two or more separate windings).

1.1.2 Transformers are normally to be of the dry, air-cooled type.

1.1.3 When a forced air cooling system is used, an alarm is to be activated in the event of its failure.

1.1.4 Liquid-cooled transformers may be used provided that:

- the liquid is non-toxic and of a type which does not readily support combustion
- the construction is such that the liquid is not spilled in inclined position
- temperature and pressure relief devices with an alarm are installed
- drip trays or other suitable arrangements for collecting the liquid from leakages are provided
- a liquid gauge indicating the normal liquid level range is fitted.

1.1.5 Transformers are to have enclosures with a degree of protection in accordance with Sec 3, Tab 2.

1.2 Terminals

1.2.1 Suitable fixed terminal connections are to be provided in an accessible position with sufficient space for convenient connection of the external cables.

1.2.2 Terminals are to be clearly identified.

1.3 Short-circuit conditions and parallel operation

1.3.1 In determining the voltage ratio and the impedance voltage of transformers, account is to be taken of the total permitted voltage drop from the main switchboard's busbars to the consumers (see Sec 3, [9.11.4]).

1.3.2 Transformers are to be constructed to withstand, without damage, the thermal and mechanical effects of a secondary terminal short-circuit for 2 s, with rated primary voltage and frequency.

For transformers of 1 MVA and over, this is to be justified with appropriate tests or documentation.

1.3.3 When transformers are so arranged that their secondary windings may be connected in parallel, their winding connections are to be compatible, their rated voltage ratios are to be equal (with tolerances allowed) and their short-circuit impedance values, expressed as a percentage, are to have a ratio within 0,9 to 1,1.

When transformers are intended for operation in parallel, the rated power of the smallest transformer in the group is to be not less than half of the rated power of the largest transformer in the group.

1.4 Electrical insulation and temperature rise

1.4.1 Insulating materials for windings and other current carrying parts are to comply with the requirements of Sec 2.

1.4.2 All windings of air-cooled transformers are to be suitably treated to resist moisture, air salt mist and oil vapours.

1.4.3 The permissible limits of temperature rise with an ambient air temperature of 45°C for (natural or forced) air-cooled transformers are given in Tab 1. The temperature rises shown for windings refer to measurement by the resistance method while those for the core refer to the thermometer method.

1.4.4 For dry-type transformers cooled with an external liquid cooling system, the permissible limits of temperature rise with a sea water temperature of 32°C are 13°C higher than those specified in Tab 1.

1.4.5 For liquid-cooled transformers, the following temperature rises measured by the resistance method apply:

- 55°C where the fluid is cooled by air
- 68°C where the fluid is cooled by water.

1.5 Insulation tests

1.5.1 Transformers are to be subjected to a high voltage test in accordance with the procedure defined in Sec 4, [4.9].

1.5.2 The test voltage is to be applied between each winding under test and the other windings not under test, core and enclosure all connected together.

Single-phase transformers for use in a polyphase group are to be tested in accordance with the requirements applicable to that group.

1.5.3 The r.m.s. value of the test voltage is to be equal to 2 U + 1000 V, with a minimum of 2500 V, where U is the rated voltage of the winding. The full voltage is to be maintained for 1 minute.

1.5.4 Partially rewound windings are to be tested at 75% of the test voltage required for new machines.

Table 1 : Temperature rise limits for transformers

No.	Part of machine	Temperature rise by class of insulation, in °C				
		A	E	B	F	H
1	Windings	55	70	75	95	120
2	Cores and other parts: a) in contact with the windings b) not in contact with the windings	a) the same values as for the windings b) in no case is the temperature to reach values such as to damage either the core itself or other adjacent parts or materials				

1.5.5 The insulation resistance of a new, clean and dry transformer, measured after the temperature rise test has been carried out (at or near operating temperature) at a voltage equal to 500 V d.c., is to be not less than 5 MΩ.

1.5.6 Transformers are to be subjected to an induced voltage insulation test by applying to the terminals of the winding under test a voltage equal to twice the rated voltage. The duration of the test is to be 60 s for any test frequency fp up to and including twice the rated frequency fn.

If the test frequency exceeds twice the rated frequency, the test time in seconds will be 120 f_n/f_p with a minimum of 15 s.

2 Testing

2.1 General

2.1.1 On new transformers intended for essential services the tests specified in [2.2] are to be carried out.

2.1.2 The manufacturer is to issue a test report giving, inter alia, information concerning the construction, type, serial number, insulation class and all other technical data relevant to the transformer, as well as the results of the tests required.

Such test reports are to be made available to the Society.

2.1.3 In the case of transformers which are completely identical in rating and in all other constructional details, it will be acceptable for the temperature rise test to be performed on only one transformer.

The results of this test and the serial number of the tested transformer are to be inserted in the test reports for the other transformers.

2.1.4 Where the test procedure is not specified, the requirements of IEC 60076 apply.

2.1.5

The tests and, if appropriate, manufacture of transformers of 100 kVA and over (60 kVA when single phase) intended for essential services are to be attended by a Surveyor of the Society.

Transformers of 5 kVA up to the limit specified above are approved on a case by case basis, at the discretion of the Society, subject to the submission of adequate documentation and routine tests.

Note 1: An alternative inspection scheme may be agreed by the Society with the Manufacturer whereby the attendance of the Surveyor will not be required as indicated above.

2.2 Tests on transformers

2.2.1 Tests to be carried out on transformers are specified in Tab 2.

Table 2 : Tests to be carried out on transformers

No.	Tests	Type test **(1)**	Routine test **(2)**
1	Examination of the technical documentation, as appropriate, and visual inspection **(3)**	X	X
2	Insulation resistance measurement	X	X
3	High voltage test	X	X
4	Temperature rise measurement	X	
5	Induced voltage test	X	X
6	Voltage ratio	X	X

(1) Type test on prototype transformer or test on at least the first batch of transformers.

(2) The certificates of transformers routine tested are to contain the manufacturer's serial number of the transformer which has been type tested and the test result.

(3) A visual examination is to be made of the transformer to ensure, as far as practicable, that it complies with technical documentation.

SECTION 6 SEMICONDUCTOR CONVERTORS

1 Constructional and operational requirements

1.1 Construction

1.1.1 Semiconductor convertors are generally to comply with the requirements for switchgear assemblies (see Sec 8).

1.1.2 The monitoring and control circuits are generally to comply with the requirements of Chapter 3.

1.1.3 For liquid-cooled convertors the following provisions are to be satisfied:

- liquid is to be non-toxic and of low flammability
- drip trays or other suitable means are to be provided to contain any liquid leakages
- the resistivity of the cooling fluid in direct contact with semiconductor or other current carrying parts is to be monitored and an alarm initiated if the resistivity is outside the specified limits.

1.1.4 Where forced cooling is used, the temperature of the heated cooling medium is to be monitored.

If the temperature exceeds a preset value an alarm is to be given and the shutdown of the convertor is to be activated.

1.1.5 Where forced (air or liquid) cooling is provided, it is to be so arranged that the convertor cannot be or remain loaded unless effective cooling is maintained.

Alternatively, other effective means of protection against overtemperature may be provided.

1.1.6 Stacks of semiconductor elements, and other equipment such as fuses, or control and firing circuit boards etc., are to be so arranged that they can be removed from equipment without dismantling the complete unit.

1.1.7 Semiconductor convertors are to be rated for the required duty having regard to the peak loads, system transient and overvoltage and to be dimensioned so as to withstand the maximum short-circuit currents foreseen at the point of installation for the time necessary to trip the protection of the circuits they supply.

1.2 Protection

1.2.1 Semiconductor elements are to be protected against short-circuit by means of devices suitable for the point of installation in the network.

1.2.2 Overcurrent and overvoltage protection is to be installed to protect the convertor. When the semiconductor convertor is designed to work as an inverter supplying the network in transient periods, precautions necessary to limit the current are to be taken.

1.2.3 Semiconductor convertors are not to cause distortion in the voltage wave form of the power supply at levels exceeding the voltage wave form tolerances at the other user input terminals (see Sec 2, [2.2]).

1.2.4 An alarm is to be provided for tripping of protective devices against overvoltages and overcurrents in electric propulsion convertors and for convertors for the emergency source of power.

1.3 Parallel operation with other power sources

1.3.1 For convertors arranged to operate in parallel with other power sources, load sharing is to be such that under normal operating conditions overloading of any unit does not occur and the combination of paralleled equipment is stable.

1.4 Temperature rise

1.4.1 The permissible limit of temperature rise of the enclosure of the semiconductors is to be assessed on the basis of an ambient air temperature of 45°C or sea water temperature of 32°C for water-cooled elements, taking into account its specified maximum permissible temperature value.

1.4.2 The value of the maximum permissible temperature of the elements at the point where this can be measured (point of reference) is to be stated by the manufacturer.

1.4.3 The value of the mean rated current of the semiconductor element is to be stated by the manufacturer.

1.5 Insulation test

1.5.1 The test procedure is that specified in IEC Publication 60146.

1.5.2 The effective value of the test voltage for the insulation test is to be as shown in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Test voltages for high voltage test on static convertors

$\frac{U_m}{\sqrt{2}} = U$ in V **(1)**	Test voltage V
$U \leq 60$	600
$60 < U \leq 90$	900
$90 < U$	$2U + 1000$ (at least 2000)

(1) U_m: highest crest value to be expected between any pair of terminals.

2 Testing

2.1 General

2.1.1 *(1/1/2017)*

All the convertors are to be subjected to the tests stated in [2.2].

2.1.2 *(1/1/2017)*

For convertors intended for essential services the manufacturer is to provide a test report, giving information on the construction, type, serial number and all technical data relevant to the convertor, as well as the results of the tests required; for other convertors the test report is to be made available upon request.

Note 1: An alternative inspection scheme may be agreed by the Society with the Manufacturer whereby the attendance of the Surveyor will not be required as indicated above.

2.1.3 In the case of convertors which are completely identical in rating and in all other constructional details, it will be acceptable for the rated current test and temperature rise measurement stipulated in [2.2] not to be repeated.

2.1.4 The tests and, if appropriate, manufacture of convertors of 50 kVA and over intended for essential services are to be attended by a Surveyor of the Society.

2.2 Tests on convertors

2.2.1 Convertors are to be subjected to tests in accordance with Tab 2.

Type tests are the tests to be carried out on a prototype convertor or the first of a batch of convertors, and routine tests are the tests to be carried out on subsequent convertors of a particular type.

2.2.2 Final approval of convertors is to include complete function tests after installation on board, performed with all ship's systems in operation and in all characteristic load conditions.

Table 2 : Tests to be carried out on static convertors

No.	Tests	Type test **(1)**	Routine test **(2)**
1	Examination of the technical documentation, as appropriate, and visual inspection **(3)** including check of earth continuity	X	X
2	Light load function test to verify all basic and auxiliary functions	X	X
3	Rated current test	X	
4	Temperature rise measurement	X	
5	Insulation test (dielectric strength test and insulation resistance measurement)	X	X
6	Protection of the convertors in case of failure of forced cooling system	X	X

(1) Type test on prototype convertor or test on at least the first batch of convertors.

(2) The certificates of convertors routine tested are to contain the manufacturer's serial number of the convertor which has been type tested and the test result.

(3) A visual examination is to be made of the convertor to ensure, as far as practicable, that it complies with technical documentation.

SECTION 7 STORAGE BATTERIES, CHARGERS AND UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SYSTEMS

1 Constructional requirements for batteries

1.1 General

1.1.1 The requirements of this Section apply to permanently installed storage batteries (not to portable batteries).

1.1.2 *(1/1/2019)*

Storage batteries may be of the lead-acid or nickel-alkaline type, due consideration being given to the suitability for any specific application.

The use of batteries other than Lead-acid or alkaline batteries is allowed subject to the compliance of the battery system and its installation to the requirements given in App 2.

Storage batteries of satisfactorily proven design (e.g. silver/zinc) may be accepted provided they are suitable for shipboard use to the satisfaction of the Society.

1.1.3 Cells are to be assembled in suitable crates or trays equipped with handles for convenient lifting.

1.2 Vented batteries

1.2.1 Vented batteries are those in which the electrolyte can be replaced and freely releases gas during periods of charge and overcharge.

1.2.2 Vented batteries are to be constructed to withstand the movement of the ship and the atmosphere (salt mist, oil etc.) to which they may be exposed.

1.2.3 Battery cells are to be so constructed as to prevent spilling of electrolyte at any inclination of the battery up to 40° from the vertical.

1.2.4 It is to be possible to check the electrolyte level and the pH.

1.3 Valve-regulated sealed batteries

1.3.1 Valve-regulated sealed batteries are batteries whose cells are closed under normal conditions but which have an arrangement which allows the escape of gas if the internal pressure exceeds a predetermined value. The cells cannot normally receive addition to the electrolyte.

Note 1: The cells of batteries which are marketed as “sealed” or “maintenance free” are fitted with a pressure relief valve as a safety precaution to enable uncombined gas to be vented to the atmosphere; they should more properly be referred to as valve-regulated sealed batteries. In some circumstances the quantity of gas vented can be up to 25% of the equivalent vented design. The design is to take into consideration provision for proper ventilation.

1.3.2 Cell design is to minimise risks of release of gas under normal and abnormal conditions.

1.4 Tests on batteries

1.4.1 The battery autonomy is to be verified on board in accordance with the operating conditions.

2 Constructional requirements for chargers

2.1 Characteristics

2.1.1 Chargers are to be adequate for the batteries for which they are intended and provided with a voltage regulator.

2.1.2 In the absence of indications regarding its operation, the battery charger is to be such that the completely discharged battery can be recharged to 80% capacity within a period of 10 hours without exceeding the maximum permissible charging current. A charging rate other than the above (e.g. fully charged within 6 hours for batteries for starting of motors) may be required in relation to the use of the battery.

2.1.3 For floating service or for any other condition where the load is connected to the battery while it is on charge, the maximum battery voltage is not to exceed the safe value of any connected apparatus.

Note 1: Consideration is to be given to the temperature variation of the batteries.

2.1.4 The battery charger is to be designed so that the charging current is set within the maximum current allowed by the manufacturer when the battery is discharged and the floating current to keep the battery fully charged.

2.1.5 Trickle charging to neutralise internal losses is to be provided. An indication is to be provided to indicate a charging voltage being present at the charging unit.

2.1.6 Protection against reversal of the charging current is to be provided.

2.1.7 Battery chargers are to be constructed to simplify maintenance operation. Indications are to be provided to visualise the proper operation of the charger and for troubleshooting.

2.2 Tests on chargers

2.2.1 Battery chargers are to be subjected to tests in accordance with Tab 1.

Type tests are the tests to be carried out on a prototype charger or the first of a batch of chargers, and routine tests are the tests to be carried out on subsequent chargers of a particular type.

2.2.2

The tests of battery chargers of 50 kVA and over intended for essential services are to be attended by a Surveyor of the Society.

Note 1: An alternative inspection scheme may be agreed by the Society with the Manufacturer whereby the attendance of the Surveyor will not be required as indicated above.

3 Uninterruptible power system (UPS) units as alternative and/or transitional power

3.1 Application

3.1.1

These requirements for UPS units apply when providing an alternative power supply or transitional power supply to services as defined in SOLAS Chapter II-1, Regulations 42 and 43 and when providing an alternative power supply to primary essential services as defined in Sec 1, [3.3.1].

A UPS unit complying with these requirements may provide an alternative power supply as an accumulator battery in terms of being an independent power supply for services defined in SOLAS Chapter II-1, Regulation 42, 2.3 or 43, 2.4 and primary essential services as defined in Sec 1, [3.3.1].

3.2 Definitions

3.2.1

Uninterruptible Power System (UPS) - combination of convertors, switches and energy storage means, for example batteries, constituting a power system for maintaining continuity of load power in case of input power failure

Off-line UPS unit - a UPS unit where under normal operation the output load is powered from the bypass line (raw mains) and only transferred to the inverter if the bypass supply fails or goes outside preset limits. This transition will invariably result in a brief (typically 2 to 10 ms) break in the load supply.

Line interactive UPS unit - an off-line UPS unit where the bypass line switches to stored energy power when the input power goes outside the preset voltage and frequency limits.

On-line UPS unit - a UPS unit where, under normal operation, the output load is powered from the inverter and will therefore continue to operate without a break in the event of the supply input failing or going outside preset limits.

3.3 Design and construction

3.3.1

UPS units are to be constructed in accordance with IEC 62040 or an acceptable and relevant national or international standard.

3.3.2

The operation of the UPS is not to depend upon external services.

3.3.3

The type of UPS unit employed, whether off-line, line interactive or on-line, is to be appropriate to the power supply requirements of the connected load equipment.

3.3.4

An external bypass is to be provided.

3.3.5

The UPS unit is to be monitored and audible and visual alarm is to be given in a normally attended location for:

- power supply failure (voltage and frequency) to the connected load,
- earth fault,
- operation of a battery protective device,
- when the battery is being discharged, and
- when the bypass is in operation for on-line UPS units.

3.4 Location

3.4.1

The UPS unit providing an alternative power supply or transitional power supply to services as defined in SOLAS Chapter II-1, Regulations 42 and 43 is to be suitably located for use in an emergency.

3.4.2

UPS units using valve regulated sealed batteries may be located in compartments with normal electrical equipment, provided the ventilation arrangements are in accordance with the requirements of IEC 62040 or an acceptable and relevant national or international standard.

3.5 Performance

3.5.1

The output power is to be maintained for the duration required for the connected emergency services as stated in SOLAS Chapter II-1, Regulation 42 or 43.

3.5.2

No additional circuits are to be connected to the UPS unit without verification that the latter has adequate capacity. The UPS battery capacity is, at all times, to be capable of supplying the designated loads for the time specified in the regulations.

3.5.3

On restoration of the input power, the rating of the charge unit is to be sufficient to recharge the batteries while maintaining the output supply to the load equipment.

3.6 Testing and survey

3.6.1

UPS units of 50 kVA and over are to be surveyed by the Society during manufacturing and testing.

3.6.2

Appropriate testing is to be carried out to demonstrate that the UPS unit is suitable for its intended environment. This is expected to include, as a minimum, the following tests:

- Functionality, including operation of alarms;
- Temperature rise;
- Ventilation rate;
- Battery capacity.

3.6.3

Where the supply is to be maintained without a break following a power input failure, this is to be verified after installation by means of a practical test.

Table 1 : Tests to be carried out on battery chargers

No.	Tests	Type test **(1)**	Routine test **(2)**
1	Examination of the technical documentation, as appropriate, and visual inspection **(3)** including check of earth continuity	X	X
2	Functional tests (current and voltage regulation, quick, slow, floating charge, alarms)	X	X
3	Temperature rise measurement	X	
4	Insulation test (dielectric strength test and insulation resistance measurement)	X	X

(1) Type test on prototype battery charger or test on at least the first batch of battery chargers.

(2) The certificates of battery chargers routine tested are to contain the manufacturer's serial number of the battery charger which has been type tested and the test result.

(3) A visual examination is to be made of the battery charger to ensure, as far as practicable, that it complies with technical documentation.

SECTION 8 SWITCHGEAR AND CONTROLGEAR ASSEMBLIES

1 Constructional requirements for main and emergency switchboards

1.1 Construction

1.1.1 *(1/1/2021)*

Construction is to be in accordance with IEC Publication 60092-302-2.

1.1.2 *(1/1/2021)*

Switchboard manufactured and tested to standards other than those specified in [1.1.1] will be accepted provided they are in accordance with an acceptable international or national standard of an equivalent or higher safety level.

1.1.3 Where the framework, panels and doors of the enclosure are of steel, suitable measures are to be taken to prevent overheating due to the possible circulation of eddy currents.

1.1.4 Insulating material for panels and other elements of the switchboard is at least to be moisture-resistant and flame-retardant.

1.1.5 Switchboards are to be of dead front type, with enclosure protection according to Sec 3, Tab 2.

1.1.6 Switchboards are to be provided with insulated handrails or handles fitted in an appropriate position at the front of the switchboard. Where access to the rear is necessary for operational or maintenance purposes, an insulated handrail or insulated handles are to be fitted.

1.1.7 Where the aggregate capacity of generators connected to the main busbars exceeds 100 kVA, a separate cubicle for each generator is to be arranged with flame-retardant partitions between the different cubicles. Similar partitions are to be provided between the generator cubicles and outgoing circuits.

1.1.8 Instruments, handles or push-buttons for switchgear operation are to be placed on the front of the switchboard. All other parts which require operation are to be accessible and so placed that the risk of accidental touching of live parts, or accidental making of short-circuits and earthings, is reduced as far as practicable.

1.1.9 Where it is necessary to make provision for the opening of the doors of the switchboard, this is to be in accordance with one of the following requirements:

a) opening is to necessitate the use of a key or tool (e.g. when it is necessary to replace a lamp or a fuse-link)

b) all live parts which can be accidentally touched after the door has been opened are to be disconnected before the door can be opened

c) the switchboard is to include an internal barrier or shutter with a degree of protection not less than IP2X shielding all live parts such that they cannot accidentally be touched when the door is open. It is not to be possible to remove this barrier or shutter except by the use of a key or tool.

1.1.10 All parts of the switchboard are to be readily accessible for maintenance, repair or replacement. In particular, fuses are to be able to be safely inserted and withdrawn from their fuse-bases.

1.1.11 Hinged doors which are to be opened for operation of equipment on the door or inside are to be provided with fixing devices for keeping them in open position.

1.1.12 Means of isolation of the circuit-breakers of generators and other important parts of the installation are to be provided so as to permit safe maintenance while the main busbars are alive.

1.1.13 Where components with voltage exceeding the safety voltage are mounted on hinged doors, the latter are to be electrically connected to the switchboard by means of a separate, flexible protective conductor.

1.1.14 All measuring instruments and all monitoring and control devices are to be clearly identified with indelible labels of durable, flame-retardant material.

1.1.15 The rating of each circuit, together with the rating of the fuse or the appropriate setting of the overload protective device (circuit-breaker, thermal relay etc.) for each circuit is to be permanently indicated at the location of the fuse or protective device.

1.2 Busbars and bare conductors

1.2.1 Busbars are to be of copper or of copper-surrounded aluminium alloy if suitable for use in the marine environment and if precautions are taken to avoid galvanic corrosion.

1.2.2 All connections are to be so made as to inhibit corrosion.

1.2.3 Busbars are to be dimensioned in accordance with IEC Publication 60092-302.

The mean temperature rise of busbars is not to exceed 45°C under rated current condition with an ambient air temperature of 45°C (see Sec 2, [1.2.5]) and is not to have any harmful effect on adjacent components. Higher values of temperature rise may be accepted to the satisfaction of the Society.

1.2.4 The cross-section of neutral connection on an a.c. three-phase, four-wire system is to be at least 50% of the cross-section for the corresponding phases.

1.2.5 Bare main busbars, excluding the conductors between the main busbars and the supply side of outgoing units, are to have the minimum clearances and creepage distances given in Tab 1.

The values shown apply to clearances and creepage distances between live parts as well as between live parts and exposed conductive parts.

Table 1 : Clearance and creepage distances

Rated insulation voltage a.c. r.m.s. or d.c. V	Minimum clearance mm	Minimum creepage distance mm
≤ 250	15	20
> 250 to ≤ 690	20	25
> 690	25	35

Note 1: Clearance is the distance between two conductive parts along a string stretched the shortest way between such parts. Creepage distance is the shortest distance along the surface of an insulating material between two conductive parts.

1.2.6 Reduced values as specified in IEC Publication 60092-302 may be accepted for type tested and partially type tested assemblies.

The reference values for the evaluation of the minimum clearances and creepage distances for these assemblies are based on the following:

- pollution degree 3 (conductive pollution occurs, or dry non-conductive pollution occurs which becomes conductive due to condensation which is expected)
- overvoltage category III (distribution circuit level)
- inhomogenous field conditions (case A)
- rated operational voltage 1000 V a.c., 1500 V d.c.
- group of insulating material IIIa.

Special consideration is to be given to equipment located in spaces where a pollution degree higher than 3 is applicable, e.g. in diesel engine rooms.

1.2.7 Busbars and other bare conductors with their supports are to be mechanically dimensioned and fixed such that they can withstand the stresses caused by short-circuits.

1.2.8 Busbars and bare conductors are to be protected, where necessary, against falling objects (e.g. tools, fuses or other objects).

1.3 Internal wiring

1.3.1 Insulated conductors for internal wiring of auxiliary circuits of switchboards are to be constructed in accordance with Sec 9, [1.1.5].

1.3.2 All insulated conductors provided for in [1.3.1] are to be of flexible construction and of the stranded type.

1.3.3 Connections from busbars to protective devices are to be as short as possible. They are to be laid and secured in such a way to minimise the risk of a short-circuit.

1.3.4 All conductors are to be secured to prevent vibration and are to be kept away from sharp edges.

1.3.5 Connections leading to indicating and control instruments or apparatus mounted in doors are to be installed such that they cannot be mechanically damaged due to movement of the doors.

1.3.6 Non-metallic trays for internal wiring of switchboards are to be of flame-retardant material.

1.3.7 Control circuits are to be installed and protected such that they cannot be damaged by arcs from the protective devices.

1.3.8 Where foreseen, fixed terminal connectors for connection of the external cables are to be arranged in readily accessible positions.

1.4 Switchgear and controlgear, protective devices

1.4.1

Switchgear and controlgear are to comply with IEC 60947 series adjusted as necessary for the ambient air reference temperature specified in Sec 2, Tab 1 and to be type tested or type approved when required in accordance with Sec 15.

1.4.2 The characteristics of switchgear, controlgear and protective devices for the various consumers are to be in compliance with Sec 3, [7].

1.4.3

For high voltage switchgear and controlgear see Sec 13, [7].

1.4.4

For materials and construction, see Sec 2, [4] and Sec 2, [5].

1.4.5

Power-driven circuit-breakers are to be equipped with an additional separate drive operated by hand.

1.4.6

Power circuit-breakers with a making capacity exceeding 10 kA are to be equipped with a drive which performs the make operation independently of the actuating force and speed.

1.4.7

Where the conditions for closing the circuit-breaker are not satisfied (e.g. if the undervoltage trip is not energised), the closing mechanism is not to cause the closing of the contacts.

1.4.8
All circuit-breakers rated more than 16 A are to be of the trip-free type, i.e. the breaking action initiated by overcurrent or undervoltage releases is to be fulfilled independently of the position of the manual handle or other closing devices.

1.4.9
Short-circuit releases are generally to be independent of energy supplied from circuits other than that to be protected. Tripping due to short-circuit is to be reliable even in the event of a total loss of voltage in the protected circuit.

1.4.10
Short-circuit releases for generators are to be equipped with reclosing inhibitors and are to be delayed for selective tripping.

1.4.11
Overload releases or relays are to operate reliably at any voltage variation of the supply voltage in the protected circuit.

1.4.12
Undervoltage relays or releases are to cause the circuit-breaker to open if the voltage drops to 70%-35% of the rated voltage.

1.4.13
Shunt releases are to ensure the disconnection of the circuit-breaker even when the supply voltage of the release drops to 85% of the rated supply voltage.

1.4.14
The reverse power protection device is to respond to the active power regardless of the power factor, and is to operate only in the event of reverse power.

1.4.15
Single-phase failure devices in three-phase circuits are to operate without a time lag.

1.4.16
Insulation monitoring devices are to continuously monitor the insulation resistance to earth and trigger an alarm should the insulation resistance fall below a predetermined value.

The measuring current of such devices is not to exceed 30 mA in the event of a total short to earth.

1.5 Fuses

1.5.1
Low voltage fuses are to comply with IEC Publication 60269 series and are to be type tested or type approved when required in accordance with Sec 15, [2.1.1].

1.5.2
For high voltage fuses see Sec 13, [7].

1.6 Auxiliary circuits

1.6.1 Auxiliary circuits are to be designed in such a manner that, as far as practicable, faults in such circuits do not impair the safety of the system. In particular, control circuits are to be designed so as to limit the dangers resulting from a fault between the control circuit and earth (e.g. inadvertent operation or malfunction of a component in the installation), also taking account of the earthing system of their supply.

1.6.2 Auxiliary circuits of essential systems are to be independent of other auxiliary circuits.

1.6.3 Common auxiliary circuits for groups of consumers are permitted only when the failure of one consumer jeopardises the operation of the entire system to which it belongs.

1.6.4 Auxiliary circuits are to be branched off from the main circuit in which the relevant switchgear is used.

1.6.5 The supply of auxiliary circuits by specifically arranged control distribution systems will be specially considered by the Society.

1.6.6 Means are to be provided for isolating the auxiliary circuits as well when the main circuit is isolated (e.g. for maintenance purposes).

1.6.7 For the protection of auxiliary circuits see Sec 3, [7.13].

1.7 Instruments

1.7.1 The upper limit of the scale of every voltmeter is to be not less than 120% of the rated voltage of the circuit in which it is installed.

1.7.2 The upper limit of the scale of every ammeter is to be not less than 130% of the normal rating of the circuit in which it is installed.

1.7.3 The upper limit of the scale of every wattmeter is to be not less than 120% of the rated voltage of the circuit in which it is installed.

1.7.4 Wattmeters for use with a.c. generators which may be operated in parallel are to be capable of indicating 15% reverse power.

1.7.5 For wattmeters using one current circuit only, the measurement of the current of all generators is to be made in the same phase.

1.7.6 The rated value of the measure read, at full load, is to be clearly indicated on the scales of instruments.

1.7.7 Frequency meters are to have a scale at least $\pm$ 5% of the nominal frequency.

1.7.8 The secondary windings of instrument transformers are to be earthed.

1.7.9 Each a.c. generator not operated in parallel is to be provided with:

- 1 voltmeter
- 1 frequency meter
- 1 ammeter in each phase or 1 ammeter with a selector switch to enable the current in each phase to be read
- 1 three-phase wattmeter in the case of generators rated more than 50 kVA.

1.7.10 Each a.c. generator operated in parallel is to be provided with:

- 1 three-phase wattmeter
- 1 ammeter in each phase or 1 ammeter with a selector switch to enable the current in each phase to be read.

1.7.11 For paralleling purposes the following are to be provided:

- 2 voltmeters
- 2 frequency meters
- 1 synchroscope and synchronising indicating lamps or equivalent means.

A switch is to be provided to enable one voltmeter and one frequency meter to be connected to each generator before the latter is connected to the busbars.

The other voltmeter and frequency meter are to be permanently connected to the busbars.

1.7.12 Each secondary distribution system is to be provided with one voltmeter.

1.7.13 Switchboards are to be fitted with means for monitoring the insulation level of insulated distribution systems as stipulated in Sec 3, [3.2.1].

1.7.14 The main switchboard is to be fitted with a voltmeter or signal lamp indicating that the cable between the shore-connection box and the main switchboard is energised (see Sec 3, [3.8.7]).

1.7.15 For each d.c. power source (e.g. convertors, rectifiers and batteries), one voltmeter and one ammeter are to be provided, except for d.c. power sources for starting devices (e.g. starting motor for emergency generator).

2 Constructional requirements for distribution boards

2.1 Construction

2.1.1 *(1/1/2021)*

Distribution boards are to be constructed, insofar as applicable, as specified for main and emergency switchboards.

2.1.2 All parts which require operation in normal use are to be placed on the front.

2.1.3 Distribution switchboards which are provided with two or more supply circuits arranged for automatic standby connection are to be provided with positive indication of which of the circuits is feeding the switchboard.

3 Testing

3.1 General

3.1.1 Switchboards are to be subjected to the tests specified from [3.2] to [3.4].

3.1.2 The manufacturer is to issue the relative test reports providing information concerning the construction, serial number and technical data relevant to the switchboard, as well as the results of the tests required.

3.1.3 The tests are to be carried out prior to installation on board.

3.1.4 *(1/1/2021)*

The test procedures are as specified in IEC Publication 60092-302-2.

3.1.5 *(1/1/2021)*

The following switchgear and controlgear assemblies are to be surveyed by the Society during testing:

a) main and emergency switchboards;

b) low voltage distribution boards, starters and motor control centers having busbars rated current of 100A and above;

c) steering gear starter;

d) high voltage assemblies.

3.2 Inspection of equipment, check of wiring and electrical operation test

3.2.1 It is to be verified that the switchboard:

- complies with the approved drawings
- maintains the prescribed degree of protection
- is constructed in accordance with the relevant constructional requirements, in particular as regards creepage and clearance distances.

3.2.2 The connections, especially screwed or bolted connections, are to be checked for adequate contact, possibly by random tests.

3.2.3 Depending on the complexity of the switchboard it may be necessary to carry out an electrical functioning test. The test procedure and the number of tests depend on whether or not the switchboard includes complicated interlocks, sequence control facilities, etc. In some cases it may be necessary to conduct or repeat this test following installation on board.

3.3 High voltage test

3.3.1 The test is to be performed with alternating voltage at a frequency between 25 and 100 Hz of approximately sinusoidal form.

3.3.2 The test voltage is to be applied:

- between all live parts connected together and earth
- between each polarity and all the other polarities connected to earth for the test.

During the high voltage test, measuring instruments, ancillary apparatus and electronic devices may be disconnected and tested separately in accordance with the appropriate requirements.

3.3.3 The test voltage at the moment of application is not to exceed half of the prescribed value. It is then to be increased steadily within a few seconds to its full value. The prescribed test voltage is to be maintained for 1 minute.

3.3.4 The value of the test voltage for main and auxiliary circuits is given in Tab 2 and Tab 3.

Table 2 : Test voltages for main circuits

Rated insulation voltage U_i V	Test voltage c.a (r.m.s.) V
$U_i \leq 60$	1000
$60 < U_i \leq 300$	2000
$300 < U_i \leq 660$	2500
$660 < U_i \leq 800$	3000
$800 < U_i \leq 1000$	3500

Table 3 : Test voltage for auxiliary circuits

Rated insulation voltage U_i V	Test voltage c.a (r.m.s.) V
$U_i \leq 12$	250
$12 < U_i \leq 60$	500
$U_i > 60$	2 U_i + 1000 (at least 1500)

3.4 Measurement of insulation resistance

3.4.1 Immediately after the high voltage test, the insulation resistance is to be measured using a device with a direct current voltage of at least 500 V.

3.4.2 The insulation resistance between all current carrying parts and earth (and between each polarity and the other polarities) is to be at least equal to 1 MΩ.

SECTION 9 CABLES

1 Constructional requirements

1.1 Construction

1.1.1

Cables manufactured in accordance with the relevant recommendations of IEC Publications 60092-350, 60092-360, 60092-352, 60092-353, 60092-354, 60092-370 and 60092-376 are acceptable to the Society provided that they are tested as specified in this Chapter.

1.1.2 Mineral-insulated cables are to be constructed according to IEC Publication 60702.

1.1.3 Optical fibre cables are to be constructed in accordance with IEC Publication 60794.

1.1.4 Flexible cables constructed according to national standards will be specially considered by the Society.

1.1.5 *(1/7/2017)*

Cables manufactured and tested to standards other than those specified in [1.1.1] will be accepted provided they are in accordance with an acceptable and relevant international or national standard of an equivalent or higher safety level.

1.1.6 Insulated wiring for auxiliary circuits of switchboards may be constituted by cables with a single conductor of the stranded type for all sections, PVC- or rubber-insulated in accordance with the Publications cited in [1.1.1] and without further protection.

The insulated wiring is to be at least of the flame-retardant type according to IEC Publication 60332-1. Equivalent types of flame-retardant switchboard wires will be specially considered by the Society.

1.2 Conductors

1.2.1 Conductors are to be of annealed electrolytic copper with a resistivity not exceeding 17,241 Ω mm^2/km at 20°C according to IEC 60228.

1.2.2 Individual conductor wires of rubber-insulated cables are to be tinned or coated with a suitable alloy.

1.2.3 All conductors are to be stranded, except for cables of nominal cross-sectional area 2,5 mm^2 and less (provided that adequate flexibility of the finished cable is assured).

1.2.4 For the minimum nominal cross-sectional areas permitted, see Sec 3, [9.10].

1.3 Insulating materials

1.3.1 The materials used for insulation are to comply with IEC Publication 60092-360 and to have the thicknesses specified for each type of cable in the relevant standard. The maximum permissible rated temperature is specified for the various materials.

1.3.2 Materials and thicknesses other than those in [1.3.1] will be specially considered by the Society.

1.4 Inner covering, fillers and binders

1.4.1 The cores of a multicore cable are to be laid up. The spaces between the cores are to be filled so as to obtain an assembly having an essentially circular cross-section. The filling may be omitted in multicore cables having a conductor cross-sectional area not exceeding 4 mm^2.

When a non-metallic sheath is applied directly over the inner covering or the fillers, it may substitute partially for the inner covering or fillers.

1.4.2 The materials used, the binders and the thicknesses of the inner coverings are generally to be in accordance with IEC Publications of the series 60092-3.., in relation to the type of cable.

1.5 Protective coverings (armour and sheath)

1.5.1 Metallic armour, if not otherwise protected against corrosion, is to be protected by means of a coating of protective paint (see Sec 3, [9.3]).

1.5.2 The paint is to be non-flammable and of adequate viscosity. When dry, it is not to flake off.

1.5.3 The materials and construction used for (metal) armour are to be in accordance with IEC Publication 60092-350 and their dimensions are to be those specified for each type of cable in the relevant standard.

1.5.4 The materials used for sheaths are to be in accordance with IEC Publication 60092-360 and are to have the thicknesses specified for each type of cable in the relevant standard.

The quality of the materials is to be adequate to the service temperature of the cable.

1.5.5 Materials other than those in [1.5.3] and [1.5.4] will be specially considered by the Society.

1.6 Identification

1.6.1 Each cable is to have clear means of identification so that the manufacturer can be determined.

1.6.2 Fire non propagating cables are to be clearly labelled with indication of the standard according to which

this characteristic has been verified and, if applicable, of the category to which they correspond.

1.6.3

Fire-resisting cables are to be clearly labelled with the indication of the standard according to which this characteristic has been verified.

2 Testing

2.1 Type tests

2.1.1 Type tests are to be in accordance with the relevant IEC 60092-3.. Series Publications and IEC 60332-1, IEC 60332-3 Category A, and IEC 60331 where applicable.

2.2 Routine tests

2.2.1 Every length of finished cable is to be subjected to the tests specified in [2.2.2].

2.2.2 The following routine tests are to be carried out:

a) visual inspection

b) check of conductor cross-sectional area by measuring electrical resistance

c) high voltage test

d) insulation resistance measurement

e) dimensional checks (as necessary).

2.2.3 The manufacturer is to issue a statement providing information on the type and characteristics of the cable, as well as the results of the tests required and the Type Approval Certificates.

2.2.4 The test procedure is as specified in IEC Publication 60092-350.

2.2.5

Power cables for electrical propulsion systems, other than internal wiring in switchboards, are to be type approved and tested for acceptance in the presence of the Surveyor. Acceptance tests are to include at least:

a) a high voltage test

b) insulation resistance measurement.

2.2.6 Where an alternative scheme, e.g. a certified quality assurance system, is recognised by the Society, attendance of the Surveyor may not be required.

SECTION 10 MISCELLANEOUS EQUIPMENT

1 Lighting fittings

1.1 Applicable requirements

1.1.1 Lighting fittings are to comply with IEC Publications 60598 and 60092-306.

Lighting fittings complying with other standards will be specially considered by the Society.

1.2 Construction

1.2.1 The temperature of terminals for connection of supplying cables is not to exceed the maximum conductor temperature permitted for the cable (see Sec 3, [9.9]).

Where necessary, luminaires are to be fitted with terminal boxes which are thermally insulated from the light source.

1.2.2 Wires used for internal connections are to be of a temperature class which corresponds to the maximum temperature within the luminaire.

1.2.3 The temperature rise of parts of luminaires which are in contact with the support is not to exceed 50°C. The rise is not to exceed 40°C for parts in contact with flammable materials.

1.2.4 The temperature rise of surface parts which can easily be touched in service is not to exceed 15°C.

1.2.5 High-power lights with higher surface temperatures than those in [1.2.2] and [1.2.3] are to be adequately protected against accidental contact.

2 Accessories

2.1 Applicable requirements

2.1.1 Accessories are to be constructed in accordance with the relevant IEC Publications, and in particular with Publication 60092-306.

2.2 Construction

2.2.1 Enclosures of accessories are to be of metal having characteristics suitable for the intended use on board, or of flame-retardant insulating material.

2.2.2 Terminals are to be suitable for the connection of stranded conductors, except in the case of rigid conductors for mineral-insulated cables.

3 Plug-and-socket connections

3.1 Applicable requirements

3.1.1

Plug-and-socket connections are to comply with IEC Publication 60092-306 and with the following additional standards in relation to their use:

- in accommodation spaces, day rooms and service rooms (up to 16 A, 250 V a.c.): IEC Publication 60083 or 60320, as applicable
- for power circuits (up to 250 A, 690 V a.c.): IEC Publication 60309
- for electronic switchgear: IEC Publications, e.g. 60130 and 60603
- for refrigerated containers: ISO 1496-2
- for high voltage shore connections: IEC Publications 62613-1 and 62613-2.

4 Heating and cooking appliances

4.1 Applicable requirements

4.1.1 Heating and cooking appliances are to comply with the relevant IEC Publications (e.g. those of series 60335), with particular attention to IEC 60092-307.

4.2 General

4.2.1 Heating elements are to be enclosed and protected with metal or refractory material.

4.2.2 The terminals of the power supply cable are not to be subjected to a higher temperature than that permitted for the conductor of the connection cable.

4.2.3 The temperature of parts which are to be handled in service (switch knobs, operating handles and the like) is not to exceed the following values:

- 55°C for metal parts
- 65°C for vitreous or moulded material.

4.3 Space heaters

4.3.1 The casing or enclosure of heaters is to be so designed that clothing or other flammable material cannot be placed on them.

4.3.2 The temperature of the external surface of space heaters is not to exceed 60°C.

4.3.3 Space heaters are to be provided with a temperature limiting device without automatic reconnection which automatically trips all poles or phases not connected to

earth when the temperature exceeds the maximum permissible value.

4.4 Cooking appliances

4.4.1 Live parts of cooking appliances are to be protected such that any foods or liquids which boil over or spill do not cause short-circuits or loss of insulation.

4.5 Fuel oil and lube oil heaters

4.5.1 In continuous-flow fuel oil and lube oil heaters, the maximum temperature of the heating elements is to be below the boiling point of the oil.

4.5.2 Each oil heater is to be provided with a thermostat maintaining the oil temperature at the correct level.

4.5.3 In addition to the thermostat in [4.5.2], each oil heater is to be provided with a temperature limiting device without automatic reconnection, and with the sensing device installed as close as possible to the heating elements and permanently submerged in the liquid.

4.6 Water heaters

4.6.1 Water heaters are to be provided with a thermostat and safety temperature limiter.

5 Cable trays/protective casings made of plastics materials

5.1 General requirement

5.1.1

Cable trays/protective casings (see Note 1) made of plastic (see Note 2) materials are to be type tested (See Note 3).

Note 1: "Protective casing" means a closed cover in the form of a pipe or other closed ducts of non-circular shape.

Note 2: "Plastics" means both thermoplastic and thermosetting plastic materials with or without reinforcement, such as PVC and fibre reinforced plastics - FRP.

Note 3: Cable trays/protective casings made of plastic materials are to be type tested in accordance with IACS REC 73.

5.2 Installation Requirements

5.2.1

Cable trays/protective casings made of plastics materials are to be supplemented by metallic fixing and straps such that in the event of a fire they, and the cables affixed, are prevented from falling and causing an injury to personnel and/or an obstruction to any escape route.

Note 1: When plastic cable trays/protective casings are used on open deck, they are additionally to be protected against UV light.

5.2.2

The load on the cable trays/protective casings is to be within the Safe Working Load (SWL). The support spacing is to be not greater than the Manufacturer's recommendation or in excess of the spacing at the SWL test. In general it is not to exceed 2 metres.

The selection and spacing of cable tray/protective casing supports are to take into account:

- dimensions of cable trays/protective casings;
- mechanical and physical properties of their material;
- mass of cable trays/protective casings;
- loads due to weight of cables, external forces, thrust forces and vibrations;
- maximum accelerations to which the system may be subjected;
- combination of loads.

5.2.3

The sum of the cables' total cross-sectional area, based on the cables' external diameter, is not to exceed 40% of the protective casing's internal cross-sectional area. This does not apply to a single cable in a protective casing.

SECTION 11 LOCATION

1 General

1.1 Location

1.1.1 The degree of protection of the enclosures and the environmental categories of the equipment are to be appropriate to the spaces or areas in which they are located; see Sec 3, Tab 2, Sec 3, Tab 3 and Sec 2, [5.2.2].

1.2 Areas with a risk of explosion

1.2.1 Except where the installation of equipment for explosive gas atmosphere is provided for by the Rules, electrical equipment is not to be installed where flammable gases or vapours are liable to accumulate; see Sec 3, [10].

2 Main electrical system

2.1 Location in relation to the emergency system

2.1.1 The arrangement of the emergency electrical system is to be such that a fire or other casualty in spaces containing the emergency source of electrical power, associated converting equipment, if any, the emergency switchboard and the emergency lighting switchboard will not render inoperative the main electric lighting system and the other primary essential services.

2.2 Main switchboard

2.2.1 *The main switchboard shall be so placed relative to one main generating station that, as far as is practicable, the integrity of the normal electrical supply may be affected only by a fire or other casualty in one space.*

2.2.2 *An environmental enclosure for the main switchboard, such as may be provided by a machinery control room situated within the main boundaries of the space, is not to be considered as separating switchboards from generators.*

2.2.3 The main generating station is to be situated within the machinery space, i.e. within the extreme main transverse watertight bulkheads.

2.2.4 Any bulkhead between the extreme main transverse watertight bulkheads is not regarded as separating the equipment in the main generating station provided that there is access between the spaces.

2.2.5 The main switchboard is to be located as close as practicable to the main generating station, within the same machinery space and the same vertical and horizontal A60 fire boundaries.

2.2.6 *(1/1/2021)*
Where essential services for steering and propulsion are supplied from distribution boards, these and any transformers, convertors and similar appliances constituting an essential part of the electrical supply system are also to satisfy the above provisions.

2.2.7 A non-required subdivision bulkhead, with sufficient access, located between the switchboard and generators, or between two or more generators, is not to be considered as separating the equipment.

3 Emergency electrical system

3.1 Spaces for the emergency source

3.1.1 *The emergency source of electrical power, associated transforming equipment, if any, transitional source of emergency power, emergency switchboard and emergency lighting switchboard shall be located above the uppermost continuous deck and shall be readily accessible from the open deck.*

They shall not be located forward of the collision bulkhead.

3.1.2 *The spaces containing the emergency source of electrical power, associated transforming equipment, if any, the transitional source of emergency electrical power and the emergency switchboard are not to be contiguous to the boundaries of machinery spaces of Category A or those spaces containing the main source of electrical power, associated transforming equipment, if any, and the main switchboard.*

Where this is not practicable, the contiguous boundaries are to be Class A60.

3.2 Location in relation to the main electrical system

3.2.1 *The location of the emergency source of electrical power, associated transforming equipment, if any, the transitional source of emergency power, the emergency switchboard and the emergency lighting switchboard in relation to the main source of electrical power, associated transforming equipment, if any, and the main switchboard shall be such as to ensure to the satisfaction of the Society that a fire or other casualty in the space containing the main source of electrical power, associated transforming equipment, if any, and the main switchboard or in any machinery space of Category A will not interfere with the supply, control and distribution of emergency electrical power.*

3.2.2 The arrangement of the main electrical system is to be such that a fire or other casualty in spaces containing the main source of electrical power, associated converting equipment, if any, the main switchboard and the main light-

ing switchboard will not render inoperative the emergency electric lighting system and the other emergency services other than those located within the spaces where the fire or casualty has occurred.

3.3 Emergency switchboard

3.3.1 *The emergency switchboard shall be installed as near as is practicable to the emergency source of electrical power.*

3.3.2 *Where the emergency source of electrical power is a generator, the emergency switchboard shall be located in the same space unless the operation of the emergency switchboard would thereby be impaired.*

3.4 Emergency battery

3.4.1 *No accumulator battery fitted in accordance with the provisions of* Sec 3, [2.3] *shall be installed in the same space as the emergency switchboard.*

3.4.2 *(1/1/2021)*

For ships not subject to SOLAS, accumulator batteries fitted in accordance with the provisions of Sec 3, [2.3] may be accepted in the same space as the emergency switchboard, provided that they are not vented type batteries connected to a charging device of power greater than 2 kW.

4 Distribution boards

4.1 Distribution boards for cargo spaces and similar spaces

4.1.1 Distribution boards containing multipole switches for the control of power and lighting circuits in bunkers and cargo spaces are to be situated outside such spaces.

4.2 Distribution board for navigation lights

4.2.1 The distribution board for navigation lights is to be placed in an accessible position on the bridge.

5 Cable runs

5.1 General

5.1.1 Cable runs are to be selected so as to be as far as practicable accessible, with the exception of single cables, situated behind walls or ceilings constructed of incombustible materials, supplying lighting fittings and socket-outlets in accommodation spaces, or cables enclosed in pipes or conduits for installation purposes.

5.1.2 Cable runs are to be selected so as to avoid action from condensed moisture and from dripping of liquids.

5.1.3 Connection and draw boxes are to be accessible.

5.1.4 Cables are generally not to be installed across expansion joints.

Where this is unavoidable, however, a loop of cable of length proportional to the expansion of the joint is to be provided (see Sec 12, [7.2.2]).

5.2 Location of cables in relation to the risk of fire and overheating

5.2.1 Cables and wiring serving essential or emergency power, lighting, internal communications or signals are, so far as is practicable, to be routed clear of galleys, laundries, machinery spaces of Category A and their casings and other high fire risk areas, except for supplying equipment in those spaces.

5.2.2 When it is essential that a circuit functions for some time during a fire and it is unavoidable to carry the cable for such a circuit through a high fire risk area (e.g. cables connecting fire pumps to the emergency switchboard), the cable is to be of a fire-resistant type or adequately protected against direct exposure to fire.

5.2.3 *(1/1/2021)*

Main cable runs (see Note 1) and cables for the supply and control of essential services are, as far as is practicable, to be kept away from machinery parts having an increased fire risk (see Note 2) unless:

- the cables have to be connected to the subject equipment,
- the cables are protected by a steel bulkhead or deck, or
- the cables in that area are of the fire-resisting type.

Note 1: Main cable runs are for example:

- cable runs from generators and propulsion motors to main and emergency switchboards
- cable runs directly above or below main and emergency switchboards, centralised motor starter panels, distribution boards and centralised control panels for propulsion and essential auxiliaries.

Note 2: Machinery, machinery parts or equipment handling combustibles are considered to present an increased fire risk.

5.2.4 Cables and wiring serving essential or emergency power, lighting, internal communications or signals are to be arranged, as far as practicable, in such a manner as to preclude their being rendered unserviceable by heating of the bulkheads that may be caused by a fire in an adjacent space.

5.2.5 Cables are to be arranged as remote as possible from sources of heat such as hot pipes, resistors, etc. Where installation of cables near heat sources cannot be avoided, and where there is consequently a risk of damage to the cables by heat, suitable shields are to be installed, or other precautions to avoid overheating are to be taken, for example use of ventilation, heat insulation materials or special heat-resisting cables.

5.3 Location of cables in relation to electromagnetic interference

5.3.1 For the installation of cables in the vicinity of radio equipment or of cables belonging to electronic control and monitoring systems, steps are to be taken in order to limit the effects of unwanted electromagnetic interference (see Ch 3, Sec 5).

5.4 Services with a duplicate feeder

5.4.1 In the case of essential services requiring a duplicate supply (e.g. steering gear circuits), the supply and associated control cables are to follow different routes which are to be as far apart as practicable, separated both vertically and horizontally.

5.5 Emergency circuits

5.5.1 Cables supplying emergency circuits are not to run through spaces containing the main source of electrical power, associated transforming equipment, if any, the main switchboard and the main lighting switchboard, except for cables supplying emergency equipment located within such spaces (see [3.2.2]).

5.6 Electrical distribution in passenger ships

5.6.1 For the electrical distribution in passenger ships, see Pt E, Ch 11, Sec 5, [1.3].

6 Storage batteries

6.1 General

6.1.1 Batteries are to be located where they are not exposed to excessive heat, extreme cold, spray, steam or other conditions which would impair performance or accelerate deterioration. They are to be installed in such a way that no damage may be caused to surrounding appliances by the vapours generated.

6.1.2 Storage batteries are to be suitably housed, and compartments (rooms, lockers or boxes) used primarily for their accommodation are to be properly constructed and efficiently ventilated so as to prevent accumulation of flammable gas.

6.1.3 Starter batteries are to be located as close as practicable to the engine or engines served.

6.1.4 *Accumulator batteries shall not be located in sleeping quarters except where hermetically sealed to the satisfaction of the Society.*

6.1.5 Lead-acid batteries and alkaline batteries are not to be installed in the same compartment (room, locker, box), unless of valve-regulated sealed type.

6.2 Large vented batteries

6.2.1 Batteries connected to a charging device of power exceeding 2 kW, calculated from the maximum obtainable charging current and the nominal voltage of the battery (hereafter referred to as "large batteries") are to be installed in a room assigned to batteries only.

Where this is not possible, they may be arranged in a suitable locker on deck.

6.2.2 Rooms assigned to large batteries are to be provided with mechanical exhaust ventilation.

Natural ventilation may be employed for boxes located on open deck.

6.2.3 The provisions of [6.2.1] and [6.2.2] also apply to several batteries connected to charging devices of total power exceeding 2 kW calculated for each one as stated in [6.2.1].

6.3 Moderate vented batteries

6.3.1 Batteries connected to a charging device of power between 0,2 kW and 2 kW calculated as stated in [6.2.1] (hereafter referred to as "moderate batteries") are to be arranged in the same manner as large batteries or placed in a box or locker in suitable locations such as machinery spaces, storerooms or similar spaces. In machinery spaces and similar well-ventilated compartments, these batteries may be installed without a box or locker provided they are protected from falling objects, dripping water and condensation where necessary.

6.3.2 Rooms, lockers or boxes assigned to moderate batteries are to be provided with natural ventilation or mechanical exhaust ventilation, except for batteries installed without a box or locker (located open) in well-ventilated spaces.

6.3.3 The provisions of [6.3.1] and [6.3.2] also apply to several batteries connected to charging devices of total power between 0,2 kW and 2 kW calculated for each one as stated in [6.2.1].

6.4 Small vented batteries

6.4.1 Batteries connected to a charging device of power less than 0,2 kW calculated as stated in [6.2.1] (hereafter referred to as "small batteries") are to be arranged in the same manner as moderate or large batteries, or without a box or locker, provided they are protected from falling objects, or in a box in a ventilated area.

6.4.2 Boxes for small batteries may be ventilated only by means of openings near the top to permit escape of gas.

6.5 Ventilation

6.5.1 The ventilation of battery compartments is to be independent of ventilation systems for other spaces.

6.5.2 The quantity of air expelled (by natural or forced ventilation) for compartments containing vented type batteries is to be at least equal to:

$Q = 110 \cdot I \cdot n$

where:

Q : Quantity of air expelled, in litres per hour

I : Maximum current delivered by the charging equipment during gas formation, but not less than one quarter of the maximum obtainable charging current in amperes

n : Number of cells in series.

6.5.3 The quantity of air expelled (by natural or forced ventilation) for compartments containing valve-regulated sealed batteries is to be at least 25% of that given in [6.5.2].

6.5.4 Ducts are to be made of a corrosion-resisting material or their interior surfaces are to be painted with corrosion-resistant paint.

6.5.5 Adequate air inlets (whether connected to ducts or not) are to be provided near the floor of battery rooms or the bottom of lockers or boxes (except for that of small batteries).

Air inlet may be from the open air or from another space (for example from machinery spaces).

6.5.6 Exhaust ducts of natural ventilation systems:

a) are to be run directly from the top of the compartment to the open air above (they may terminate in the open or in well-ventilated spaces)

b) are to terminate not less than 90 cm above the top of the battery compartment

c) are to have no part more than 45° from the vertical

d) are not to contain appliances (for example for barring flames) which may impede the free passage of air or gas mixtures.

Where natural ventilation is impracticable or insufficient, mechanical exhaust ventilation is to be provided.

6.5.7 In mechanical exhaust ventilation systems:

a) electric motors are to be outside the exhaust ducts and battery compartment and are to be of safe type if installed within 3 m from the exhaust of the ventilation duct

b) fans are to be so constructed and of a material such as to render sparking impossible in the event of the impeller touching the fan casing

c) steel or aluminium impellers are not to be used

d) the system is to be interlocked with the charging device so that the battery cannot be charged without ventilation (trickle charge may be maintained)

e) a temperature sensor is to be located in the battery compartment to monitor the correct behaviour of the battery in cases where the battery element is sensitive to temperature.

6.5.8 For natural ventilation systems for deck boxes:

a) holes for air inlet are to be provided on at least two opposite sides of the box

b) the exhaust duct is to be of ample dimensions

c) the duct is to terminate at least 1,25 m above the box in a goose-neck or mushroom-head or the equivalent

d) the degree of protection is to be in accordance with Sec 3, Tab 2.

SECTION 12 INSTALLATION

1 General

1.1 Protection against injury or damage caused by electrical equipment

1.1.1 All electrical equipment is to be so installed as not to cause injury when handled or touched in the normal manner.

1.1.2 All electrical equipment is to be installed in such a way that live parts cannot be inadvertently touched, unless supplied at a safety voltage.

1.1.3 For protective earthing as a precaution against indirect contact, see [2].

1.1.4 Equipment is to be installed so as not to cause, or at least so as to reduce to a minimum, electromagnetic interference.

1.2 Protection against damage to electrical equipment

1.2.1 Electrical equipment is to be so placed that as far as practicable it is not exposed to risk of damage from water, steam, oil or oil vapours.

1.2.2 The air supply for internal ventilation of electrical equipment is to be as clean and dry as practicable; cooling air for internal ventilation is not to be drawn from below the floor plates in engine and/or boiler rooms.

1.2.3 Equipment is to be so mounted that its enclosing arrangements and the functioning of the built-in equipment will not be affected by distortions, vibrations and movements of the ship's structure or by other damage liable to occur.

1.2.4 If electrical fittings, not of aluminium, are attached to aluminium, suitable provision is to be made to prevent galvanic corrosion.

1.3 Accessibility

1.3.1 Equipment is to be so installed that sufficient space is available for inspection and maintenance as required for all its parts (see [6.1.3]).

2 Earthing of non-current carrying parts

2.1 Parts which are to be earthed

2.1.1 Exposed metal parts of both fixed and portable electrical machines or equipment which are not intended to be live but which are liable under fault conditions to become live and similar metal parts inside non-metallic enclosures are to be earthed unless the machines or equipment are:

a) supplied at a voltage not exceeding 50 V direct current or 50 V, root mean square between conductors, achieved without the use of auto-transformers (safety voltage); or

b) supplied at a voltage not exceeding 250 V by safety isolating transformers supplying one consuming device only; or

c) constructed in accordance with the principle of double insulation.

2.1.2 To minimise shock from high frequency voltage induced by the radio transmitter, handles, handrails and other metal elements on the bridge or upper decks are to be in electrical connection with the hull or superstructures.

2.2 Methods of earthing

2.2.1 Metal frames or enclosures of apparatus and electrical machinery may be fixed to, and in metallic contact with, the ship's structure, provided that the surfaces in contact are clean and free from rust, scale or paint when installed and are firmly bolted together.

2.2.2 For metal frames or enclosures which are not earthed as specified in [2.2.1], earthing connections complying with [2.3] and [2.4] are to be used.

2.2.3 For requirements regarding the earthing of coverings of cables and the mechanical protection of cables, see [7.11] and [7.12].

2.3 Earthing connections

2.3.1 Every earthing connection is to be of copper or other corrosion-resistant material and is to be securely installed and protected, where necessary, against damage and electrolytic corrosion.

2.3.2 The nominal cross-sectional area of each copper earthing connection is to be not less than that required in Tab 1.

Earthing connections of other metals are to have conductance at least equal to that specified for a copper earthing connection.

Table 1 : Cross-sectional area of earth-continuity conductors and earthing connections

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">Type of earthing connection</td><td>Cross-sectional area of associated current carrying conductor</td><td colspan="2">Minimum cross-sectional area of copper earthing connection</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Earth-continuity conductor in flexible cable or flexible cord</td><td>any</td><td colspan="2">Same as current carrying conductor up to and including 16 mm^2 and one half above 16 mm^2 but at least 16 mm^2</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">2</td><td rowspan="3">Earth-continuity conductor incorporated in fixed cable</td><td rowspan="3">any</td><td colspan="2">a) for cables having an insulated earth-continuity conductor
• a cross-section equal to the main conductors up to and including 16 mm^2, but minimum 1,5 mm^2
• a cross-section not less than 50% of the cross-section of the main conductor when the latter is more than 16 mm^2, but at least 16 mm^2
b) for cables with a bare earth wire in direct contact with the lead sheath</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cross-section of main conductor mm^2</td><td>Earthing connection mm^2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1 ÷ 2,5
4 ÷ 6</td><td>1
1,5</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">3</td><td rowspan="3">Separate fixed earthing conductor</td><td>≤ 2,5 mm^2</td><td colspan="2">Same as current carrying conductor subject to minimum of 1,5 mm^2 for stranded earthing connection or 2,5 mm^2 for unstranded earthing connection</td></tr>
<tr><td>> 2,5 mm^2 but ≤ 120 mm^2</td><td colspan="2">One half the cross-sectional area of the current carrying conductor, subjected to a minimum of 4 mm^2</td></tr>
<tr><td>> 120 mm^2</td><td colspan="2">70 mm^2</td></tr>
</table>

2.3.3 Metal parts of portable appliances are to be earthed, where required (see [2.1.1]), by means of an earth-continuity conductor in the flexible supply cable or cord, which has the cross-sectional area specified in Tab 1 and which is earthed, for example, through the associated plug and socket.

2.3.4 In no circumstances is the lead sheathing or armour of cables to be relied upon as the sole means of earthing.

2.4 Connection to the ship's structure

2.4.1 Every connection of an earth-continuity conductor or earthing lead to the ship's structure is to be secured by means of a screw of brass or other corrosion-resistant material of diameter not less than 6 mm.

2.4.2 Such earthing connection is not to be used for other purposes.

2.4.3 The connection described in [2.4.1] is to be located in an accessible position where it may readily be checked.

2.5 Earthed distribution systems

2.5.1 The system earthing of earthed distribution systems is to be effected by means independent of any earthing arrangements of non-current carrying parts and is to be connected to the hull at one point only.

2.5.2 In an earthed distribution system in which the earthing connection does not normally carry current, this connection is to conform with the requirements of [2.3], except that the lower limit of 70 mm^2 (see Tab 1) does not apply.

2.5.3 In a distribution system with hull return, the system earthing connection is to have at least the same cross-sectional area as the feeder lines.

2.5.4 The earthing connection is to be in an accessible position where it may readily be inspected and disconnected for insulation testing.

2.6 Aluminium superstructures

2.6.1 When aluminium superstructures are insulated from the steel hull to prevent electrolytic corrosion, they are to be secured to the hull by means of a separate bonding connection.

2.6.2 The connections are to be adequately close together and are to have a resistance less than 0.1 Ω.

2.6.3 The connections are to be located where they may readily be inspected.

3 Rotating machines

3.1

3.1.1 Every rotating machine is preferably to be installed with the shaft in the fore-and-aft direction. Where a rotating machine of 100 kW and over is installed athwartship, or vertically, it is to be ensured that the design of the bearings

and the arrangements for lubrication are satisfactory to withstand the rolling specified in Sec 2, Tab 4.

4 Semiconductor convertors

4.1 Semiconductor power convertors

4.1.1 Naturally air-cooled semiconductor convertors are to be installed such that the circulation of air to and from the stacks or enclosures is not impeded and that the temperature of the cooling inlet air to convertor stacks does not exceed the ambient temperature for which the stacks are specified.

5 Vented type storage batteries

5.1 General

5.1.1 Batteries are to be arranged so that each cell or crate of cells is accessible from the top and at least one side to permit replacement and periodical maintenance.

5.1.2 Cells or crates are to be carried on insulating supports of material non-absorbent to the electrolyte (e.g. treated wood).

5.1.3 Cells are to be securely chocked by means of insulating material non-absorbent to the electrolyte, e.g. strips of treated wood. Special mechanical precautions are to be taken to prevent the emergency battery fron being damaged by the shock due to a collision.

5.1.4 Provision is to be made for the free circulation of air.

5.2 Protection against corrosion

5.2.1 The interior of battery compartments (rooms, lockers, boxes) including all metal parts subject to the electrolyte is to be protected against the deteriorating effect of the latter by electrolyte-resistant coating or other equivalent means, unless corrosion-resistant materials are used.

5.2.2 Interior surfaces of metal shelves for battery cells, whether or not grouped in crates or trays, are to be protected by a lining of electrolyte-resistant material, watertight and carried up to at least 75 mm on all sides. In particular, linings are to have a minimum thickness of 1,5 mm, if of lead sheet for lead-acid batteries, and of 0,8 mm, if of steel for alkaline batteries.

Alternatively, the floor of the room or locker is to be lined as specified above to a height of at least 150 mm.

5.2.3 Battery boxes are to be lined in accordance with [5.2.2] to a height of at least 75 mm.

6 Switchgear and controlgear assemblies

6.1 Main switchboard

6.1.1 The main switchboard is to be so arranged as to give easy access as may be needed to apparatus and equipment, without danger to personnel.

6.1.2 An unobstructed space is to be left in front of the switchboard wide enough to allow access for operation; such width is generally about 1 metre.

When withdrawable equipment is contained in the switchboard, the width of the space is to be not less than 0,5 m when the equipment is fully withdrawn.

Reduced widths may be considered for small ships.

6.1.3 Where necessary, an unobstructed space is to be provided at the rear of the switchboard ample to permit maintenance; in general, the width of this passage is to be not less than 0,6 m, except that this may be reduced to 0,5 m in way of stiffeners and frames, and the height sufficient for the operation foreseen.

6.1.4 Where the switchboard is open at the rear, the rear space in [6.1.3] is to form a locked space provided at each end with an access door. The required IP protection for the corresponding location is to be fulfilled.

6.1.5 If necessary, the clear height above the switchboard specified by the manufacturer is to be maintained for pressure relief in the event of a short-circuit.

6.1.6 When the voltage exceeds the safety voltage, non-conducting mats or gratings are to be provided at the front and rear of the switchboard as necessary.

6.1.7 Piping and conduits are not to be installed directly above or in the vicinity of switchboards and controlgear assemblies.

Where this is unavoidable, pipes and conduits are to have welded joints only or to be provided with protection against spray from steam or pressurised liquids or dripping.

6.2 Emergency switchboard

6.2.1 For the installation of the emergency switchboard, the same requirements apply as given in [6.1] for the installation of the main switchboard.

6.3 Distribution boards

6.3.1 *(1/1/2021)*

For the installation of distribution boards, the same requirements apply, as far as applicable, as given in [6.1] for the installation of the main switchboard.

7 Cables

7.1 General

7.1.1 Cables having insulating materials with different maximum permissible conductor temperatures are not to be bunched together.

Where this is not practicable, the cables are to be so installed that no cable reaches a temperature higher than its rating.

7.1.2 Cables having a protective covering which may damage the covering of more vulnerable cables are not to be bunched with the latter.

7.1.3 Cables having a bare metallic sheath (e.g. of copper) or braid or armour are to be installed in such a way that galvanic corrosion by contact with other metals is prevented.

7.1.4 All cables and wiring external to equipment are to be so installed as not to impair their original flame-retarding properties.

To this end, the following methods may be used:

a) the use of cables which have been tested in accordance with IEC Publication 332-3 Category A or an equivalent test procedure for cables installed in bunches, or

b) the use of fire stops having at least B0 penetrations fitted as follows (see Fig 1, Fig 2, Fig 3 and Fig 4):
   - cable entries at the main and emergency switchboard
   - where cables enter engine control rooms
   - cable entries at centralised control panels for propulsion machinery and essential auxiliaries
   - at each end of totally enclosed cable trunks
   - at every second deck or approximately 6 metres for verticals runs and every 14 metres for horizontal runs in enclosed and semi-enclosed spaces
   - at the boundaries of the spaces in cargo areas.

c) the use of fire protection coating applied to at least 1 metre in every 14 metres on horizontal cable runs and over the entire length of vertical cable runs for cables installed in enclosed and semi-enclosed spaces.

The cable penetrations are to be installed in steel plates of at least 3 mm thickness extending all around to twice the largest dimension of the cable run for vertical runs and once for horizontal runs, but need not extend through ceilings, decks, bulkheads or solid sides of trunks. These precautions apply in particular to bunches of 5 or more cables in areas with a high fire risk (such as Category A machinery spaces, galleys etc.) and to bunches of more than 10 cables in other areas.

7.2 Radius of bend

7.2.1 The internal radius of bend for the installation of cables is to be chosen according to the type of cable as recommended by the manufacturer.

Its value is generally to be not less than the figure given in Tab 2.

7.2.2 Where the installation of cables across expansion joints is unavoidable, the minimum internal radius of the loop at the end of the travel of the expansion joint is to be not less than 12 times the external diameter of the cable.

Figure 1 : Totally enclosed trunks

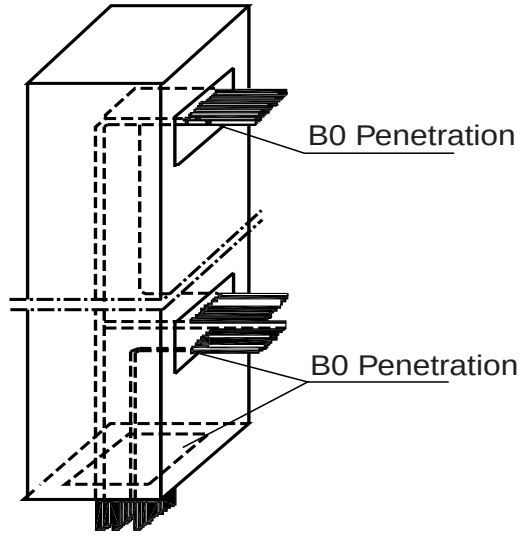


Table 2 : Bending radii

Cable construction		Overall diameter of cable (D)	Minimum internal radius of bend
Insulation	Outer covering		
Thermoplastic or thermosetting with circular copper conductors	Unarmoured or unbraided	≤ 25 mm	4 D
		> 25 mm	6 D
	Metal braid screened or armoured	Any	6 D
	Metal wire armoured Metal tape armoured or metal-sheathed	Any	6 D
	Composite polyester/metal laminate tape screened units or collective tape screening	Any	8 D
Thermoplastic or thermosetting with shaped copper conductors	Any	Any	8 D

Figure 2 : Non-totally enclosed trunks, vertical

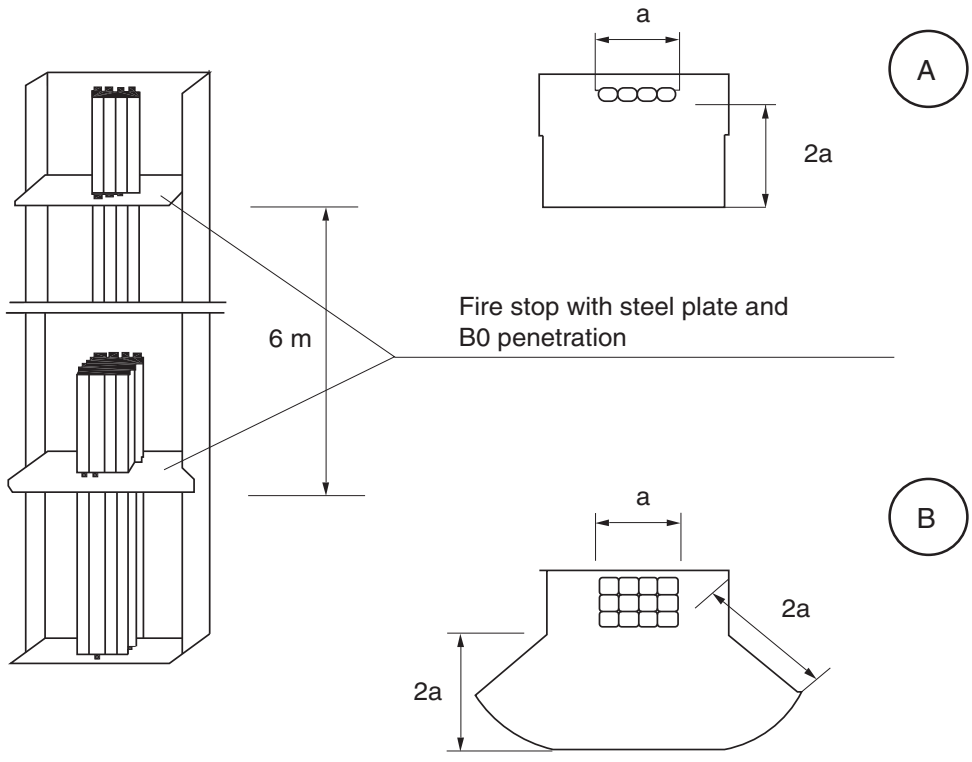


Figure 3 : Non-totally enclosed trunks, horizontal

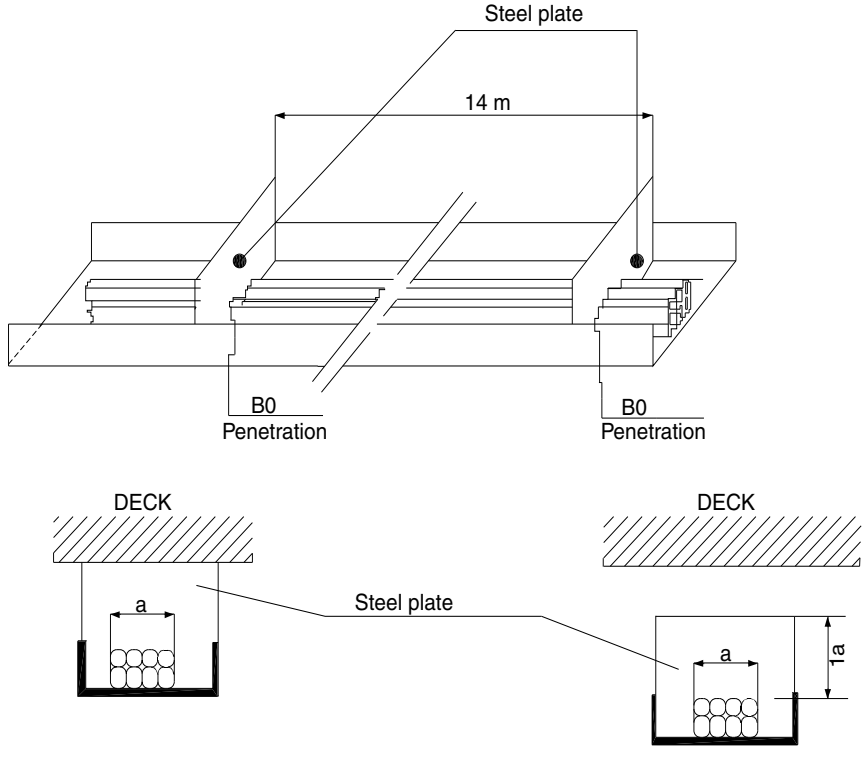
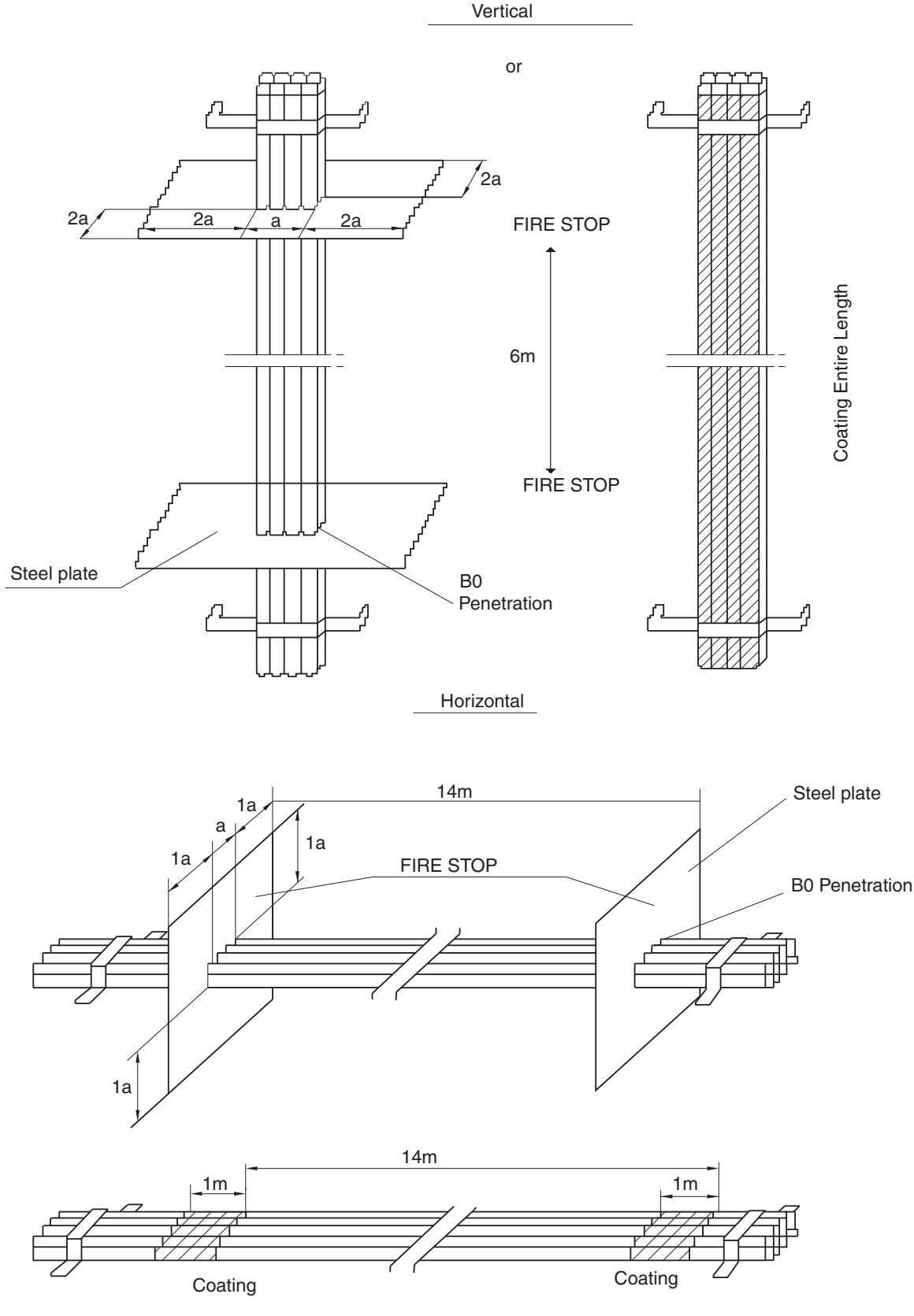


Figure 4 : Open cables runs



7.3 Fixing of cables

7.3.1 *Cables shall be installed and supported in such a manner as to avoid chafing or other damage.*

7.3.2 The supports (tray plates, separate support brackets or hanger ladders) and the corresponding accessories are to be of robust construction and of corrosion-resistant material or suitably treated before erection to resist corrosion.

When cables are installed directly on aluminium structures, fixing devices of aluminium or suitably treated steel are to be used.

For mineral-insulated cables with copper sheath, fixing devices in contact with the sheath are to be of copper alloy.

7.3.3 With the exception of cables installed in pipes, conduits, trunkings or special casings, cables are to be fixed by means of clips, saddles or straps of suitable material, in order to tighten the cables without their coverings being damaged.

7.3.4 Cable clips or straps made from a material other than metal are to be manufactured of a flame-retardant material.

7.3.5 The distances between fastenings and between supports are to be suitably chosen according to the type and number of cables and the probability of vibration.

7.3.6 When cables are fixed by means of clips or straps made from a material other than metal and these cables are not laid on top of horizontal cable supports (e.g. in the case of vertical installation), suitable metal clips or saddles spaced not more than 1 metre apart are to be used in addition in order to prevent the release of cables during a fire.

7.3.7 Suspended cables of fire-resisting type are to be fixed by means of steel straps spaced not more than 500 mm apart.

7.4 Mechanical protection

7.4.1 Cables exposed to risk of mechanical damage are to be protected by metal casing, profiles or grids or enclosed in metal pipes or conduits, unless the cable covering (e.g. armour or sheath) provides adequate mechanical protection.

7.4.2 In situations where there would be an exceptional risk of mechanical damage, e.g. in holds, storage spaces, cargo spaces, etc., cables are to be protected by metal casing, trunkings or conduits, even when armoured, if the ship's structure or attached parts do not afford sufficient protection for the cables.

7.4.3 For the protection of cables passing through decks, see [7.5.3].

7.4.4 Metal casing used for mechanical protection of cables is to be effectively protected against corrosion.

7.5 Penetrations of bulkheads and decks

7.5.1 If cables have to pass without adequate support through non-watertight bulkheads and generally through holes drilled in sheets of structural steel, these holes are to be fitted with glands or bushings of suitable material.

7.5.2 If cables have to pass through a watertight bulkhead or deck, the penetration is to be effected in a watertight manner.

Either suitable individual watertight glands for single cables or boxes containing several cables and filled with a flame-retardant packing may be used for this purpose.

Whichever type of penetration is used, the watertight integrity of the bulkheads or deck is to be maintained.

7.5.3 Cables passing through decks and continuing vertically are to be protected against mechanical damage to a suitable height above the deck.

7.5.4 Where cables pass through bulkheads or decks separating areas with a risk of explosion, arrangements are to be such that hazardous gas or dust cannot penetrate through openings for the passage of cables into other areas.

7.5.5 Where cables pass through a bulkhead or deck which is required to have some degree of fire integrity, penetration is to be so effected as to ensure that the required degree of fire integrity is not impaired.

7.6 Expansion joints

7.6.1 If there is reason to fear that a tray plate, pipe or conduit may break because of the motion of the ship, different load conditions and temperature variations, appropriate expansion joints are to be provided.

This may apply in particular in the case of cable runs on the weather deck.

7.7 Cables in closed pipes or conduits

7.7.1 Closed pipes or conduits are to have such internal dimensions and radius of bend as will permit the easy drawing in and out of the cables which they are to contain; the internal radius of bend is to be not less than that permitted for cables and, for pipes exceeding 63 mm external diameter, not less than twice the external diameter of the pipe where this value is greater.

7.7.2 Closed pipes and conduits are to be suitably smooth on the interior and are to have their ends shaped or bushed in such a way as not to damage the cable covering.

7.7.3 The space factor (ratio of the sum of the cross-sectional areas corresponding to the external diameters of the cables to the internal cross-sectional areas of the pipe or conduit) is to be not greater than 0,4.

7.7.4 If necessary, openings are to be provided at the highest and lowest points so as to permit air circulation and ensure that the heat from the cables can be dissipated, and to obviate the possibility of water accumulating at any part of the pipe or conduit.

7.7.5 Vertical trunking for electrical cables is to be so constructed as not to jeopardise the required passive fire protection between the spaces.

7.7.6 Metal pipes or conduits are to be protected against corrosion.

7.7.7 Non-metallic pipes or conduits are to be flame-retardant.

7.8 Cables in casings or trunking and conduits with removable covers

7.8.1 Covers are to be removable and when they are open, cables are to be accessible.

7.8.2 Materials used are to comply with [7.7.6] and [7.7.7].

7.8.3 If the fixing of covers is by means of screws, the latter are to be of non-rusting material and arranged so as not to damage the cables.

7.8.4 Means are to be provided to ensure that the heat from the cables can be dissipated and water accumulation is avoided (see [7.7.4]).

7.9 Cable ends

7.9.1 Terminations in all conductors are to be so made as to retain the original electrical, mechanical, flame-retarding properties of the cable.

7.9.2 Where mechanical clamps are not used, the ends of all conductors having a cross-sectional area greater than 4 mm^2 are to be fitted with soldering sockets or compression-type sockets of sufficient size to contain all the strands of the conductor.

7.9.3 Cables not having a moisture-resistant insulation (e.g. mineral-insulated) are to have their ends effectively sealed against ingress of moisture.

7.10 Joints and tappings (branch circuit)

7.10.1 Cable runs are normally not to include joints. Where absolutely necessary, cable joints are to be carried out by a junction method with rebuilding of the insulation and protective coverings.

7.10.2 Joints in all conductors are to be so made as to retain the original electrical (continuity and isolation), mechanical (strength and protection), flame-retarding and, where necessary, fire-resisting properties of the cable.

7.10.3 Tappings (branch circuits) are to be made via suitable connections or in suitable boxes of such design that the conductors remain adequately insulated and protected from atmospheric action and are fitted with terminals or busbars of dimensions appropriate to the current rating.

7.10.4 Cables for safety voltages are not to terminate in the same connection boxes as cable for higher voltages unless separated by suitable means.

7.11 Earthing and continuity of metal coverings of cables

7.11.1 All metal coverings of cables are to be electrically connected to the metal hull of the ship.

7.11.2 Metal coverings are generally to be earthed at both ends of the cable, except for [7.11.3] and [7.11.4].

7.11.3 Single-point earthing is admitted for final sub-circuits (at the supply end), except for those circuits located in areas with a risk of explosion.

7.11.4 Earthing is to be at one end only in those installations (mineral-insulated cables, intrinsically safe circuits, control circuits (see Ch 3, Sec 5), etc.) where it is required for technical or safety reasons.

7.11.5 Metal coverings of single-core a.c. cables and special d.c. cables with high "ripple" content (e.g. for thyristor equipment) are to be earthed at one point only (e.g. at the mid-point).

7.11.6 The electrical continuity of all metal coverings of cables throughout the length of the latter, particularly at joints and tappings, is to be ensured.

7.11.7 The metal covering of cables may be earthed by means of glands intended for the purpose and so designed as to ensure an effective earth connection.

The glands are to be firmly attached to, and in effective electrical contact with, a metal structure earthed in accordance with these requirements.

7.11.8 The metal covering of cables may also be earthed by means of clamps or clips of corrosion-resistant material making effective contact with the covering and earthed metal.

7.12 Earthing and continuity of metal pipes, conduits and trunking or casings

7.12.1 Metal casings, pipes, conduits and trunking are to be effectively earthed.

7.12.2 Pipes or conduits may be earthed by being screwed into a metal enclosure, or by nuts on both sides of the wall of a metallic enclosure, provided the surfaces in contact are clean and free from rust, scale or paint and that the enclosure is in accordance with these requirements on earthing.

The connection is to be painted immediately after assembly in order to inhibit corrosion.

7.12.3 Pipes and conduits may be earthed by means of clamps or clips of corrosion-resistant metal making effective contact with the earthed metal.

7.12.4 Pipes, conduits or trunking together with connection boxes of metallic material are to be electrically continuous.

7.12.5 All joints in metal pipes and conduits used for earth continuity are to be soundly made and protected, where necessary, against corrosion.

7.12.6 Individual short lengths of pipes or conduits need not be earthed.

7.13 Precautions for single-core cables for a.c.

7.13.1 For the earthing of metal coverings see [7.11.5].

7.13.2 Where it is necessary to use single-core cables for alternating current circuits rated in excess of 20 A, the requirements of [7.13.3] to [7.13.7] are to be complied with.

7.13.3 Conductors belonging to the same circuit are to be contained within the same pipe, conduit or trunking, unless this is of non-magnetic material.

7.13.4 Cable clips are to include cables of all phases of a circuit unless the clips are of non-magnetic material.

7.13.5 In the installation of two, three or four single-core cables forming respectively single-phase circuits, three-phase circuits, or three-phase and neutral circuits, the cables are to be in contact with one another, as far as possible. In any event, the distance between the external covering of two adjacent cables is to be not greater than one diameter.

7.13.6 When single-core cables having a current rating greater than 250 A are installed near a steel bulkhead, the clearance between the cables and the bulkhead is to be at least 50 mm, unless the cables belonging to the same circuit are installed in trefoil twisted formation.

7.13.7 Magnetic material is not to be used between single-core cables of a group. Where cables pass through steel plates, all the conductors of the same circuit are to pass through a plate or gland, so made that there is no magnetic material between the cables, and the clearance between the cables and the magnetic material is to be no less than 75 mm, unless the cables belonging to the same circuit are installed in trefoil twisted formation.

7.14 Cables in refrigerated spaces

7.14.1 For the types of cables permitted in refrigerated spaces, see Sec 3, [9.4].

7.14.2 Power cables installed in refrigerated spaces are not to be covered by thermal insulation. Moreover, such cables are not to be placed directly on the face of the refrigerated space unless they have a thermoplastic or elastomeric extruded sheath.

7.14.3 Power cables entering a refrigerated space are to pass through the walls and thermal insulation at right angles, in tubes sealed at each end and protected against oxidation.

7.15 Cables in areas with a risk of explosion

7.15.1 For the types of cables permitted in areas with a risk of explosion, see Sec 3, [10.2].

7.15.2 For penetration of bulkheads or decks separating areas with a risk of explosion, see [7.5.4].

7.15.3 Cables of intrinsically safe circuits are to be separated from the cables of all other circuits (minimum 50 mm).

7.16 Cables in the vicinity of radio equipment

7.16.1 All cables between antennas and transmitters are to be routed separately of any other cable.

7.16.2 Where it is necessary to use single-core cables, the arrangement of conductors is to be such as to avoid complete or partial loops.

7.17 Cables for submerged bilge pumps

7.17.1 See Sec 3, [9.7].

8 Various appliances

8.1 Lighting fittings

8.1.1 Lighting fittings are to be so arranged as to prevent temperature rises which could damage the cables and wiring.

Note 1: Where the temperature of terminals of lighting fittings exceeds the maximum conductor temperature permitted for the supplied cable (see Sec 3, [9.9]), special installation arrangements, such as terminal boxes thermally insulated from the light source, are to be provided.

8.1.2 Lighting fittings are to be so arranged as to prevent surrounding material from becoming excessively hot.

8.1.3 Lighting fittings are to be secured in place such that they cannot be displaced by the motion of the vessel.

8.2 Heating appliances

8.2.1 Space heaters are to be so installed that clothing, bedding and other flammable material cannot come in contact with them in such a manner as to cause risk of fire.

Note 1: To this end, for example, hooks or other devices for hanging garments are not to be fitted above space heaters or, where appropriate, a perforated plate of incombustible material is to be mounted above each heater, slanted to prevent hanging anything on the heater itself.

8.2.2 Space heaters are to be so installed that there is no risk of excessive heating of the bulkheads or decks on which or next to which they are mounted.

8.2.3 Combustible materials in the vicinity of space heaters are to be protected by suitable incombustible and thermal-insulating materials.

8.3 Heating cables and tapes or other heating elements

8.3.1 Heating cables and tapes or other heating elements are not to be installed in contact with combustible materials.

Where they are installed close to such materials, they are to be separated by means of a non-flammable material.

SECTION 13 HIGH VOLTAGE INSTALLATIONS

1 General

1.1 Field of application

1.1.1

The following requirements apply to a.c. three-phase systems with nominal voltage exceeding 1kV, the nominal voltage being the voltage between phases.

If not otherwise stated herein, construction and installation applicable to low voltage equipment generally apply to high voltage equipment.

1.2 Nominal system voltage

1.2.1

The nominal system voltage is not to exceed 15 kV.

Note 1: Where necessary for special application, higher voltages may be accepted by the Society.

1.3 High-voltage, low-voltage segregation

1.3.1

Equipment with voltage above about 1 kV is not to be installed in the same enclosure as low voltage equipment, unless segregation or other suitable measures are taken to ensure that access to low voltage equipment is obtained without danger.

2 System Design

2.1 Distribution

2.1.1 Network configuration for continuity of ship services

It is to be possible to split the main switchboard into at least two independent sections, by means of at least one circuit breaker or other suitable disconnecting devices, each supplied by at least one generator. If two separate switchboards are provided and interconnected with cables, a circuit breaker is to be provided at each end of the cable.

Services which are duplicated are to be divided between the sections.

2.1.2 Earthed neutral systems

In the event of an earth fault, the current is not to be greater than full load current of the largest generator on the switchboard or relevant switchboard section and not less than three times the minimum current required to operate any device against earth fault.

It is to be assured that at least one source neutral to ground connection is available whenever the system is in the energised mode. Electrical equipment in directly earthed neutral or other neutral earthed systems is to withstand the current due to a single phase fault against earth for the time necessary to trip the protection device.

2.1.3 Neutral disconnection

Means of disconnection are to be fitted in the neutral earthing connection of each generator so that the generator may be disconnected for maintenance and for insulation resistance measurement.

2.1.4 Hull connection of earthing impedance

All earthing impedances are to be connected to the hull. The connection to the hull is to be so arranged that any circulating currents in the earth connections do not interfere with radio, radar, communication and control equipment circuits.

2.1.5 Divided systems

In systems with neutral earthed, connection of the neutral to the hull is to be provided for each section.

2.2 Degrees of protection

2.2.1 General

Each part of the electrical installation is to be provided with a degree of protection appropriate to the location, as a minimum the requirements of IEC 60092-201.

2.2.2 Rotating machines

The degree of protection of enclosures of rotating electrical machines is to be at least IP 23.

The degree of protection of terminals is to be at least IP44.

For motors installed in spaces accessible to unqualified personnel, a degree of protection against approaching or contact with live or moving parts of at least IP4X is required.

2.2.3 Transformers

The degree of protection of enclosures of transformers is to be at least IP23.

For transformers installed in spaces accessible to unqualified personnel a degree of protection of at least IP4X is required.

For transformers not contained in enclosures, see [8.1].

2.2.4 Switchgear, controlgear assemblies and convertors

The degree of protection of metal enclosed switchgear, controlgear assemblies and static convertors is to be at least IP32. For switchgear, control gear assemblies and static convertors installed in spaces accessible to unqualified personnel, a degree of protection of at least IP4X is required.

2.3 Insulation

2.3.1

In general, for non Type Tested equipment phase-to-phase air clearances and phase-to- earth air clearances between non-insulated parts are to be not less than those specified in Tab 1.

Intermediate values may be accepted for nominal voltages provided that the next highest air clearance is observed.

In the case of smaller distances, an appropriate voltage impulse test is to be applied.

Table 1 : Minimum clearances

Rated voltage, in kV	Minimum clearance, in mm
3 - 3,3	55
6 - 6,6	90
10 - 11	120
15	160

2.3.2 *(1/7/2016)*

Creepage distances between live parts and between live parts and earthed metal parts are to be in accordance with IEC 60092-503 for the nominal voltage of the system, the nature of the insulation material and the transient overvoltage developed by switch and fault conditions.

2.4 Protection

2.4.1 Faults on the generator side of the circuit breaker

Protective devices are to be provided against phase-to-phase faults in the cables connecting the generators to the main switchboard and against interwinding faults within the generators. The protective devices are to trip the generator circuit breaker and to automatically de-excite the generator.

In distribution systems with a neutral earthed, phase to earth faults are also to be treated as above.

2.4.2 Faults to earth *(1/7/2016)*

Any earth fault in the system is to be indicated by means of a visual and audible alarm.

In low impedance or direct earthed systems provision is to be made to automatically disconnect the faulty circuits. In high impedance earthed systems, where outgoing feeders will not be isolated in case of an earth fault, the insulation of the equipment is to be designed for the phase to phase voltage (see Note 1).

A system is defined effectively earthed (low impedance) when earthing factor is lower than 0,8. A system is defined non-effectively earthed (high impedance) when earthing factor is higher than 0,8.

Note 1: Earthing factor is defined as the ratio between the phase to earth voltage of the health phase and the phase to phase voltage. This factor may vary between $1/\sqrt{3}$and 1.

2.4.3 Power transformers

Power transformers are to be provided with overload and short circuit protection.

When transformers are connected in parallel, tripping of the protective devices on the primary side is to automatically trip the switch connected on the secondary side.

2.4.4 Voltage transformers for control and instrumentation

Voltage transformers are to be provided with overload and short circuit protection on the secondary side.

2.4.5 Fuses

Fuses are not to be used for overload protection.

2.4.6 Low voltage systems

Lower voltage systems supplied through transformers from high voltage systems are to be protected against overvoltages. This may be achieved by:

a) direct earthing of the lower voltage system

b) appropriate neutral voltage limiters

c) earthed screen between the primary and secondary windings of transformers.

2.4.7 Arc Detection System *(1/7/2017)*

In order to limit the consequences of an internal arc to the high voltage main switchboard, measures may be adopted for a rapid fault-clearance times initiated by an Arc Detection System by means of detectors, e.g. sensitive to light, pressure or heat.

Where the Arc Detection System is fitted, the following requirements are to be complied with:

a) Arc Detection Systems for each section of the main switchboard are to be independent

b) The total disconnection of one section of the main switchboard, as a consequence of an arc fault, is permitted only when it is demonstrated that an arc fault located in any compartments of the switchboard (e.g. cable compartments, circuit breaker compartment, etc.) may jeopardise the operation of the entire switchboard

c) The arrangement of the power supplies are to be in such a way that a failure inside the Arc Detection System will not cause the loss of generators and/or essential services.

d) A failure analysis is to be carried out using appropriate means (e.g. FMEA) to demonstrate that, for single failures, system will fail to safety and that system in operation will not be lost or degraded beyond acceptable performance criteria. Faults are to be simulated as realistically as possible to demonstrate appropriate system fault detection and system response.

e) The Arc Detection System, including relevant arc detectors, is to be type tested or type approved according to the tests listed in Ch 3, Sec 6, Tab 1.

3 Rotating machinery

3.1 Stator windings of generators

3.1.1

Generator stator windings are to have all phase ends brought out for the installation of the differential protection.

3.2 Temperature detectors

3.2.1

Rotating machinery is to be provided with temperature detectors in its stator windings to actuate a visual and audible alarm in a normally attended position whenever the temperature exceeds the permissible limit.

If embedded temperature detectors are used, means are to be provided to protect the circuit against overvoltage.

3.3 Tests

3.3.1

In addition to the tests normally required for rotating machinery, a high frequency high voltage test in accordance with IEC 60034-15 is to be carried out on the individual coils in order to demonstrate a satisfactory withstand level of the inter-turn insulation to steep fronted switching surges.

4 Power Transformers

4.1 General

4.1.1 *(1/7/2016)*

Dry type transformers are to comply with IEC 60076-11.

Liquid cooled transformers are to comply with IEC 60076.

Oil immersed transformers are to be provided with the following alarms and protection:

- liquid level (Low) - alarm
- liquid temperature (High) - alarm
- liquid level (Low) - trip or load reduction
- liquid temperature (High) - trip or load reduction
- gas pressure relay (High) - trip

5 Cables

5.1 General

5.1.1

Cables are to be constructed in accordance with IEC 60092-353 and 60092-354 or other equivalent Standard.

6 Fuses

6.1 General

6.1.1

Fuses are to be constructed in accordance with IEC 60282-1 or other equivalent Standard.

7 Switchgear and controlgear assemblies

7.1 General

7.1.1

Switchgear and controlgear assemblies are to be constructed according to IEC 62271-200 and the following additional requirements.

7.2 Construction

7.2.1 Mechanical construction

Switchgear is to be of metal - enclosed type in accordance with IEC 62271-200 or of the insulation - enclosed type in accordance with IEC 62271-201.

7.2.2 Locking facilities

Withdrawable circuit breakers and switches are to be provided with mechanical locking facilities in both service and disconnected positions. For maintenance purposes, key locking of withdrawable circuit breakers and switches and fixed disconnectors is to be possible.

Withdrawable circuit breakers are to be located in the service position so that there is no relative motion between fixed and moving portions.

7.2.3 Shutters *(1/7/2016)*

The fixed contacts of withdrawable circuit breakers and switches are to be so arranged that in the withdrawable position the live contacts are automatically covered.

Shutters are to be clearly marked for incoming and outgoing circuits; this is to be achieved with the use of colours or labels.

7.2.4 Earthing and short-circuiting *(1/7/2016)*

For maintenance purposes an adequate number of earthing and short-circuiting devices is to be provided to enable circuits to be worked upon with safety.

7.2.5 Internal Arc Classification (IAC) *(1/7/2016)*

Switchgear and controlgear assemblies are to be internal arc classified (IAC) in accordance with IEC 62271-200.

Where switchgear and controlgear are accessible by authorized personnel only, Accessibility Type A is sufficient. Where switchgear and controlgear are accessible by non-authorised personnel, accessibility Type B is required.

Installation and location of the switchgear and controlgear is to correspond with its internal arc classification and classified sides (F, L and R).

7.3 Auxiliary systems

7.3.1 Source of supply

If electrical energy and/or physical energy is required for the operation of circuit breakers and switches, a store supply of such energy is to be provided for at least two operations of all the components.

However, the tripping due to overload or short-circuit, and under-voltage is to be independent of any stored electrical energy sources. This does not preclude shunt tripping provided that alarms are activated upon lack of continuity in the release circuits and power supply failures.

7.3.2 Number of supply sources

When external supply is necessary for auxiliary circuits, at least two external sources of supply are to be provided and so arranged that a failure or loss of one source will not cause the loss of more than one generator set and/or set of essential services.

Where necessary, one source of supply is to be from the emergency source of electrical power for the start up from dead ship condition.

7.4 High voltage test

7.4.1

A power-frequency voltage test is to be carried out on any switchgear and controlgear assemblies. The test procedure and voltages are to be according to IEC 62271-200.

8 Installation

8.1 Electrical equipment

8.1.1 *(1/7/2016)*

Where equipment is not contained in an enclosure but a room forms the enclosure of the equipment, the access doors are to be so interlocked that they cannot be opened until the supply is isolated and the equipment earthed down.

At the entrance to spaces where high-voltage electrical equipment is installed, a suitable marking is to be placed indicating danger of high-voltage. As regards high-voltage electrical equipment installed outside the aforementioned spaces, similar marking is to be provided.

An adequate, unobstructed working space is to be left in the vicinity of high voltage equipment for preventing potential severe injuries to personnel performing maintenance activities. In addition, the clearance between the switchboard and the ceiling/deckhead above is to meet the requirements of the Internal Arc Classification (see [7.2.5]).

8.2 Cables

8.2.1 Runs of cables

In accommodation spaces, high voltage cables are to be run in enclosed cable transit systems.

8.2.2 Segregation

High voltage cables are to be segregated from cables operating at different voltage ratings; in particular, they are not to be run in the same cable bunch, in the same ducts or pipes, or in the same box.

Where high voltage cables of different voltage ratings are installed on the same cable tray, the air clearance between cables is not to be less than the minimum air clearance for the higher voltage side in [2.3.1]. However, high voltage cables are not to be installed on the same cable tray for cables operating at the nominal system voltage of 1 kV and less.

8.2.3 Installation arrangements *(1/7/2016)*

High voltage cables are generally to be installed on carrier plating cable tray when they are provided with a continuous metallic sheath or armour which is effectively bonded to earth; otherwise they are to be installed for their entire length in metallic castings effectively bonded to earth.

8.2.4 Terminations

Terminations in all conductors of high voltage cables are, as far as practicable, to be effectively covered with suitable insulating material. In terminal boxes, if conductors are not insulated, phases are to be separated from earth and from each other by substantial barriers of suitable insulating materials.

High voltage cables of the radial field type, i.e. having a conductive layer to control the electric field within the insulation, are to have terminations which provide electric stress control.

Terminations are to be of a type compatible with the insulation and jacket material of the cable and are to be provided with means to ground all metallic shielding components (i.e. tapes, wires etc).

8.2.5 Marking

High voltage cables are to be readily identifiable by suitable marking.

8.2.6 Test after installation *(1/7/2019)*

Before a new high voltage cable installation, or an addition to an existing installation, is put into service a voltage withstand test is to be satisfactorily carried out on each completed cable and its accessories.

The test is to be carried out after an insulation resistance test in accordance with Sec 15, [3.1.1].

For cables with rated voltage (U0/U) above 1,8/3 kV (Um=3,6 kV) an a.c. voltage withstand test is to be carried out upon advice from high voltage cable manufacturer. For this purpose, one of the following test methods are to be used:

a) test for 5 min with the phase-to-phase voltage of the system applied between the conductor and the metallic screen/sheath;

b) test for 24 h with the normal operating voltage of the system.

Alternatively, a d.c. voltage equal to 4 Uo is to be applied for 15 minutes.

For cables with rated voltage (U0/U) up to 1.8/3 kV (Um=3.6 kV) a d.c. voltage equal to 4 Uo is to be applied for 15 minutes.

After completion of the test the conductors are to be connected to earth for a sufficient period in order to remove any trapped electric charge.

An insulation resistance test in accordance with Sec 15, [3.1.1] is then repeated.

SECTION 14 ELECTRIC PROPULSION PLANT

1 General

1.1 Applicable requirements

1.1.1 The following requirements apply to ships for which the main propulsion plants are provided by at least one electric propulsion motor and its electrical supply. All electrical components of the propulsion plants are to comply with these requirements.

1.1.2 Prime movers are to comply with the requirements of Ch 1, Sec 2.

1.1.3 For the torsional vibration characteristics of the electric propulsion plant, the provisions of Ch 1, Sec 9 apply.

1.1.4 Cooling and lubricating oil systems are to comply with the requirements of Ch 1, Sec 10.

1.1.5 Monitoring and control systems are to comply with the requirements of Chapter 3.

1.1.6 Installations assigned an additional notation for automation are to comply with the requirements of Part F.

1.2 Operating conditions

1.2.1 The normal torque available on the electric propulsion motors for manoeuvring is to be such as to enable the vessel to be stopped or reversed when sailing at its maximum service speed.

1.2.2 Adequate torque margin is to be provided for three-phase synchronous motors to avoid the motor pulling out of synchronism during rough weather and when turning.

1.2.3 When an electric generating plant has a continuous rating greater than the electric propulsion motor rating, means are to be provided to limit the continuous input to the motor. This value is not to exceed the continuous full load torque for which motor and shafts are designed.

1.2.4 The plant as a whole is to have sufficient overload capacity to provide the torque, power and reactive power needed during starting and manoeuvring conditions.

Locked rotor torque which may be required in relation to the operation of the vessel (e.g. for navigation in ice) is to be considered.

1.2.5 The electric motors and shaftline are to be constructed and installed so that, at any speed reached in service, all the moving components are suitably balanced.

2 Design of the propulsion plant

2.1 General

2.1.1 The electrical power for the propulsion system may be supplied from generating sets, dedicated to the propulsion system, or from a central power generation plant, which supplies the ship's services and electric propulsion.

The minimum configuration of an electric propulsion plant consists of one prime mover, one generator and one electric motor. When the electrical production used for propulsion is independent of the shipboard production, the diesel engines driving the electric generators are to be considered as main engines.

2.1.2 For plants having only one propulsion motor controlled via a static convertor, a standby convertor which it is easy to switch over to is to be provided. Double stator windings with one convertor for each winding are considered as an alternative solution.

2.1.3 In electric propulsion plants having two or more constant voltage propulsion generating sets, the electrical power for the ship's auxiliary services may be derived from this source. Additional ship's generators for auxiliary services need not be fitted provided that effective propulsion and the services mentioned in Sec 3, [2.2.3] are maintained with any one generating set out of service.

Where transformers are used to supply the ship's auxiliary services, see Sec 5.

2.1.4 Plants having two or more propulsion generators, two or more static convertors or two or more motors on one propeller shaft are to be so arranged that any unit may be taken out of service and disconnected electrically, without affecting the operation of the others.

2.2 Power supply

2.2.1 Where the plant is intended exclusively for electric propulsion, voltage variations and maximum voltage are to be maintained within the limits required in Sec 2.

2.2.2 In special conditions (e.g. during crash-stop manoeuvres), frequency variations may exceed the limits stipulated in Sec 2 provided that other equipment operating on the same network is not unduly affected.

2.2.3 The electric plant is to be so designed as to prevent the harmful effects of electromagnetic interference generated by semiconductor convertors, in accordance with Sec 2.

2.3 Auxiliary machinery

2.3.1 Propeller/thruster auxiliary plants are to be supplied directly from the main switchboard or from the main distribution board or from a distribution board reserved for such circuits, at the auxiliary rated voltage.

2.3.2 When the installation has one or more lubrication systems, devices are to be provided to ensure the monitoring of the lubricating oil return temperature.

2.3.3 Propelling machinery installations with a forced lubrication system are to be provided with alarm devices which will operate in the event of oil pressure loss.

2.4 Electrical Protection

2.4.1 Automatic disconnections of electric propulsion plants which adversely affect the manoeuvrability of the ship are to be restricted to faults liable to cause severe damage to the equipment.

2.4.2 The following protection of convertors is to be provided:

- protection against overvoltage in the supply systems to which convertors are connected
- protection against overcurrents in semiconductor elements during normal operation
- short-circuit protection.

2.4.3 Overcurrent protective devices in the main circuits are to be set sufficiently high so that there is no possibility of activation due to the overcurrents caused in the course of normal operation, e.g. during manoeuvring or in heavy seas.

2.4.4 Overcurrent protection may be replaced by automatic control systems ensuring that overcurrents do not reach values which may endanger the plant, e.g. by selective tripping or rapid reduction of the magnetic fluxes of the generators and motors.

2.4.5 In the case of propulsion plants supplied by generators in parallel, suitable controls are to ensure that, if one or more generators are disconnected, those remaining are not overloaded by the propulsion motors.

2.4.6 In three-phase systems, phase-balance protective devices are to be provided for the motor circuit which de-excite the generators and motors or disconnect the circuit concerned.

2.5 Excitation of electric propulsion motor

2.5.1 Each propulsion motor is to have its own exciter.

2.5.2 For plants where only one generator or only one motor is foreseen, each machine is to be provided with a standby static electronic exciter, which it is easy to switch over to.

2.5.3 In the case of multi-propeller propulsion ships, one standby static electronic exciter which it is easy to switch over to is to be provided.

2.5.4 For the protection of field windings and cables, means are to be provided for limiting the induced voltage when the field circuits are opened. Alternatively, the induced voltage when the field circuits are opened is to be maintained at the nominal design voltage.

2.5.5 In excitation circuits, there is to be no overload protection causing the opening of the circuit, except for excitation circuits with semiconductor convertors.

3 Construction of rotating machines and semiconductor convertors

3.1 Ventilation

3.1.1 Where electrical machines are fitted with an integrated fan and are to be operated at speeds below the rated speed with full load torque, full load current, full load excitation or the like, the design temperature rise is not to be exceeded.

3.1.2 Where electrical machines or convertors are force-ventilated, at least two fans, or other suitable arrangements, are to be provided so that limited operation is possible in the event of one fan failing.

3.2 Protection against moisture and condensate

3.2.1 Machines and equipment which may be subject to the accumulation of moisture and condensate are to be provided with effective means of heating. The latter is to be provided for motors above 500 kW, in order to maintain the temperature inside the machine at about 3°C above the ambient temperature.

3.2.2 Provision is to be made to prevent the accumulation of bilge water, which is likely to enter inside the machine.

3.3 Rotating machines

3.3.1 Electrical machines are to be able to withstand the excess speed which may occur during operation of the ship.

3.3.2 The design of rotating machines supplied by static convertors is to consider the effects of harmonics.

3.3.3 The winding insulation of electrical machines is to be capable of withstanding the overvoltage which may occur in manoeuvring conditions.

3.3.4 The design of a.c. machines is to be such that they can withstand without damage a sudden short-circuit at their terminals under rated operating conditions.

3.3.5 The obtainable current and voltage of exciters and their supply are to be suitable for the output required during manoeuvring and overcurrent conditions, including short-circuit in the transient period.

3.4 Semiconductor convertors

3.4.1 The following limiting repetitive peak voltages U_{RM} are to be used as a base for each semiconductor valve:

- when connected to a supply specifically for propeller drives:
  $U_{RM} = 1,5\ U_P$
- when connected to a common main supply:
  $U_{RM} = 1,8\ U_P$
  where
  U_P : is the peak value of the rated voltage at the input of the semiconductor convertor.

3.4.2 For semiconductor convertor elements connected in series, the values in [3.4.1] are to be increased by 10%. Equal voltage distribution is to be ensured.

3.4.3 For parallel-connected convertor elements, an equal current distribution is to be ensured.

3.4.4 Means are to be provided, where necessary, to limit the effects of the rate of harmonics to the system and to other semiconductor convertors. Suitable filters are to be installed to keep the current and voltage within the limits given in Sec 2.

4 Control and monitoring

4.1 General

4.1.1 The control and monitoring systems, including programmable electronic systems, are to be type approved, according to Ch 3, Sec 6.

4.2 Power plant control systems

4.2.1 The power plant control systems are to ensure that adequate propulsion power is available, by means of automatic control systems and/or manual remote control systems.

4.2.2 The automatic control systems are to be such that, in the event of a fault, the propeller speed and direction of thrust do not undergo substantial variations.

4.2.3 Failure of the power plant control system is not to cause complete loss of generated power (i.e. blackout) or loss of propulsion.

4.2.4 The loss of power plant control systems is not to cause variations in the available power; i.e. starting or stopping of generating sets is not to occur as a result.

4.2.5 Where power-aided control (for example with electrical, pneumatic or hydraulic aid) is used for manual operation, failure of such aid is not to result in interruption of power to the propeller, any such device is to be capable of purely manual operation.

4.2.6 The control system is to include the following main functions:

- monitoring of the alarms: any event critical for the proper operation of an essential auxiliary or a main element of the installation requiring immediate action to avoid a breakdown is to activate an alarm
- speed or pitch control of the propeller
- shutdown or slow down when necessary.

4.2.7 Where the electric propulsion system is supplied by the main switchboard together with the ship's services, load shedding of the non-essential services and /or power limitation of the electric propulsion is to be provided. An alarm is to be triggered in the event of power limitation or load shedding.

4.2.8 The risk of blackout due to electric propulsion operation is to be eliminated. At the request of the Society, a failure mode and effects analysis is to be carried out to demonstrate the reliability of the system.

4.3 Indicating instruments

4.3.1 In addition to the provisions of Chapter 3 of the Rules, instruments indicating consumed power and power available for propulsion are to be provided at each propulsion remote control position.

4.3.2 The instruments specified in [4.3.3]and [4.3.4] in relation to the type of plant are to be provided on the power control board or in another appropriate position.

4.3.3 The following instruments are required for each propulsion alternator:

- an ammeter on each phase, or with a selector switch to all phases
- a voltmeter with a selector switch to all phases
- a wattmeter
- a tachometer or frequency meter
- a power factor meter or a var-meter or a field ammeter for each alternator operating in parallel
- a temperature indicator for direct reading of the temperature of the stator windings, for each alternator rated above 500 kW.

4.3.4 The following instruments are required for each a.c. propulsion motor:

- an ammeter on the main circuit
- an embedded sensor for direct reading of the temperature of the stator windings, for motors rated above 500 kW
- an ammeter on the excitation circuit for each synchronous motor
- a voltmeter for the measurement of the voltage between phases of each motor supplied through a semiconductor frequency convertor.

4.3.5 Where a speed measuring system is used for control and indication, the system is to be duplicated with separate sensor circuits and separate power supply.

4.3.6 An ammeter is to be provided on the supply circuit for each propulsion semiconductor bridge.

4.4 Alarm system

4.4.1 An alarm system is to be provided, in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 3. The system is to give an indication at the control positions when the parameters specified in [4.4] assume abnormal values or any event occurs which can affect the electric propulsion.

4.4.2 Where an alarm system is provided for other essential equipment or installations, the alarms in [4.4.1] may be connected to such system.

4.4.3

Critical alarms for propulsion may be grouped, but are to be indicated to the bridge separately from other alarms.

4.4.4 The following alarms are to be provided, where applicable:

- high temperature of the cooling air of machines and semiconductor convertors provided with forced ventilation (see Note 1)
- reduced flow of primary and secondary coolants of machines and semiconductor convertors having a closed cooling system with a heat exchanger
- leakage of coolant inside the enclosure of machines and semiconductor convertors with liquid-air heat exchangers
- high winding temperature of generators and propulsion motors, where required (see [4.3])
- low lubricating oil pressure of bearings for machines with forced oil lubrication
- tripping of protective devices against overvoltages in semiconductor convertors (critical alarm)
- tripping of protection on filter circuits to limit the disturbances due to semiconductor convertors
- tripping of protective devices against overcurrents up to and including short-circuit in semiconductor convertors (critical alarm)
- voltage unbalance of three-phase a.c. systems supplied by semiconductor frequency convertors
- earth fault for the main propulsion circuit (see Note 2)
- earth fault for excitation circuits of propulsion machines (see Note 3).

Note 1: As an alternative to the air temperature of convertors or to the airflow, the supply of electrical energy to the ventilator or the temperature of the semiconductors may be monitored.

Note 2: In the case of star connected a.c. generators and motors with neutral points earthed, this device may not detect an earth fault in the entire winding of the machine.

Note 3: This may be omitted in brushless excitation systems and in the excitation circuits of machines rated up to 500 kW. In such cases, lamps, voltmeters or other means are to be provided to detect the insulation status under operating conditions.

4.5 Reduction of power

4.5.1 Power is to be automatically reduced in the following cases:

- low lubricating oil pressure of bearings of propulsion generators and motors
- high winding temperature of propulsion generators and motors
- fan failure in machines and convertors provided with forced ventilation, or failure of cooling system
- lack of coolant in machines and semiconductor convertors
- load limitation of generators or inadequate available power.

4.5.2 When power is reduced automatically, this is to be indicated at the propulsion control position (critical alarm).

4.5.3 Switching-off of the semiconductors in the event of abnormal service operation is to be provided in accordance with the manufacturer's specification.

5 Installation

5.1 Ventilation of spaces

5.1.1 Loss of ventilation to spaces with forced air cooling is not to cause loss of propulsion. To this end, two sets of ventilation fans are to be provided, one acting as a standby unit for the other. Equivalent arrangements using several independently supplied fans may be considered.

5.2 Cable runs

5.2.1 Instrumentation and control cables are to comply with the requirements of Ch 3, Sec 5.

5.2.2 Where there is more than one propulsion motor, all cables for any one machine are to be run as far as is practicable away from the cables of other machines.

5.2.3 Cables which are connected to the sliprings of synchronous motors are to be suitably insulated for the voltage to which they are subjected during manoeuvring.

6 Tests

6.1 Test of rotating machines

6.1.1 The test requirements are to comply with Sec 4.

6.1.2 For rotating machines, such as synchronous generators and synchronous electric motors, of a power of more than 3 MW, a test program is to be submitted to the Society for approval.

6.1.3 In relation to the evaluation of the temperature rise, it is necessary to consider the supplementary thermal losses induced by harmonic currents in the stator winding. To this end, two methods may be used:

- direct test method, when the electric propulsion motor is being supplied by its own frequency convertor, and/or

back to back arrangement according to the supplier's facility

- indirect test method as defined in App 1; in this case, a validation of the estimation of the temperature excess due to harmonics is to be documented. A justification based on a computer program calculation may be taken into consideration, provided that validation of such program is demonstrated by previous experience.

7 Specific requirements for PODs

7.1 General

7.1.1 The requirements for the structural part of a POD are specified in Pt B, Ch 10, Sec 1, [11].

7.1.2 When used as steering manoeuvring system, the POD is to comply with the requirements of Ch 1, Sec 11.

7.2 Rotating commutators

7.2.1 As far as the electrical installation is concerned, the electric motor is supplied by a rotating commutator which rotates with the POD. The fixed part of the power transmission is connected to the ship supply, which uses the same components as a conventional propulsion system. Sliding contacts with a suitable support are used between the fixed and rotating parts.

7.2.2

Type tests are to be carried out, unless the manufacturer can produce evidence based on previous experience indicating the satisfactory performance of such equipment on board ships.

7.2.3 A test program is to be submitted to the Society for approval. It is to be to demonstrated that the power transmission and transmission of low level signals are not affected by the environmental and operational conditions prevailing on board. To this end, the following checks and tests are to be considered:

- check of the protection index (I.P.), in accordance with the location of the rotating commutator
- check of the clearances and creepage distances
- check of insulation material (according to the test procedure described in IEC Publication 60112)
- endurance test:

  After the contact pressure and rated current are set, the commutator is subjected to a rotation test. The number of rotations is evaluated taking into consideration the ship operation and speed rotation control system. The possibility of turning the POD 180° to proceed astern and 360° to return to the original position is to be considered. The commutator may be submitted to cycles comprising full or partial rotation in relation to the use of the POD as steering gear. The voltage drops and current are to be recorded.

  An overload test is to be carried out in accordance with Sec 4 (minimum 150%, 15 seconds)

- check of the behaviour of the sliprings when subjected to the vibration defined in Ch 3, Sec 6
- check of the behaviour of the sliprings, after damp heat test, as defined in Chapter 3, and possible corrosion of the moving parts and contacts

  After the damp heat test, are to be carried out the hereunder listed tests.

- Insulation measurement resistance test. The minimum resistance is to be in accordance with Sec 4, Tab 3.
- Dielectric strength test as defined in Sec 4.

7.3 Electric motors

7.3.1 The thermal losses are dissipated by the liquid cooling of the bulb and by the internal ventilation of the POD. The justification for the evaluation of the heating balance between the sea water and air cooling is to be submitted to the Society.

Note 1: The calculation method used for the evaluation of the cooling system (mainly based on computer programs) is to be documented. The calculation method is to be justified based on the experience of the designer of the system. The results of scale model tests or other methods may be taken into consideration.

7.3.2 Means to adjust the air cooler characteristics are to be provided on board, in order to obtain an acceptable temperature rise of the windings. Such means are to be set following the dock and sea trials.

7.4 Instrumentation and associated devices

7.4.1 Means are to be provided to transmit the low level signals connected to the sensors located in the POD.

7.5 Additional tests

7.5.1 Tests of electric propulsion motors are to be carried out in accordance with Sec 4, and other tests in accordance with Ch 1, Sec 16.

7.5.2 Tests are to be performed to check the validation of the temperature rise calculation.

SECTION 15 TESTING

1 General

1.1 Rule application

1.1.1 Before a new installation, or any alteration or addition to an existing installation, is put into service, the electrical equipment is to be tested in accordance with [3], [4] and [5] to the satisfaction of the Surveyor in charge.

1.2 Insulation-testing instruments

1.2.1 Insulation resistance may be measured with an instrument applying a voltage of at least 500 V. The measurement will be taken when the deviation of the measuring device is stabilised.

Note 1: Any electronic devices present in the installation are to be disconnected prior to the test in order to prevent damage.

2 Type approved components

2.1

2.1.1

The following components are to be type tested or type approved according to the requirements in the present Chapter 2 and, excluding cables, transformers, rotating machines and converters (but not the relevant electronic control equipment), according to the tests listed in Ch 3, Sec 6, Tab 1, as far as applicable, or in accordance with [2.1.2]:

- electrical cables (internal wiring of equipment excluded)
- transformers
- rotating machines
- electrical convertors
- circuit-breakers, contactors, fuses and fuse-combination units used in power and lighting distribution systems, motor and transformer circuits, overcurrent protective devices
- sensors, alarm panels, electronic protective devices, automatic and remote control equipment, actuators, safety devices for installations intended for essential services (steering, controllable pitch propellers, propulsion machinery, etc.), electronic speed regulators for main or auxiliary engines, electronic devices for alarm, safety and control of electrical convertors for primary essential services and emergency services as defined in Sec 3, [3.7.3].
- programmable electronic systems intended for functions which are subject to classification requirements.

2.1.2 Case by case approval based on submission of adequate documentation and execution of tests may also be granted at the discretion of the Society.

3 Insulation resistance

3.1 Lighting and power circuits

3.1.1 The insulation resistance between all insulated poles (or phases) and earth and, where practicable, between poles (or phases), is to be at least 1 MΩ in ordinary conditions.

The installation may be subdivided to any desired extent and appliances may be disconnected if initial tests give results less than that indicated above.

3.2 Internal communication circuits

3.2.1 Circuits operating at a voltage of 50 V and above are to have an insulation resistance between conductors and between each conductor and earth of at least 1 MΩ.

3.2.2 Circuits operating at voltages below 50 V are to have an insulation resistance between conductors and between each conductor and earth of at least 0,33 MΩ.

3.2.3 If necessary, any or all appliances connected to the circuit may be disconnected while the test is being conducted.

3.3 Switchboards

3.3.1 *(1/1/2021)*

The insulation resistance between each busbar and earth and between each insulated busbar and the busbar connected to the other poles (or phases) of each main switchboard, emergency switchboard, distribution board, etc. is to be not less than 1 MΩ.

3.3.2 The test is to be performed before the switchboard is put into service with all circuit-breakers and switches open, all fuse-links for pilot lamps, earth fault-indicating lamps, voltmeters, etc. removed and voltage coils temporarily disconnected where otherwise damage may result.

3.4 Generators and motors

3.4.1 The insulation resistance of generators and motors, in normal working condition and with all parts in place, is to be measured and recorded.

3.4.2 The test is to be carried out with the machine hot immediately after running with normal load.

3.4.3 The insulation resistance of generator and motor connection cables, field windings and starters is to be at least 1 MΩ.

4 Earth

4.1 Electrical constructions

4.1.1 Tests are to be carried out, by visual inspection or by means of a tester, to verify that all earth-continuity conductors and earthing leads are connected to the frames of apparatus and to the hull, and that in socket-outlets having earthing contacts, these are connected to earth.

4.2 Metal-sheathed cables, metal pipes or conduits

4.2.1 Tests are to be performed, by visual inspection or by means of a tester, to verify that the metal coverings of cables and associated metal pipes, conduits, trunking and casings are electrically continuous and effectively earthed.

5 Operational tests

5.1 Generating sets and their protective devices

5.1.1 Generating sets are to be run at full rated load to verify that the following are satisfactory:

- electrical characteristics
- commutation (if any)
- lubrication
- ventilation
- noise and vibration level.

5.1.2 Suitable load variations are to be applied to verify the satisfactory operation under steady state and transient conditions (see Sec 4, [2]) of:

- voltage regulators
- speed governors.

5.1.3 Generating sets intended to operate in parallel are to be tested over a range of loading up to full load to verify that the following are satisfactory:

- parallel operation
- sharing of the active load
- sharing of the reactive load (for a.c. generators).

Synchronising devices are also to be tested.

5.1.4 The satisfactory operation of the following protective devices is to be verified:

- overspeed protection
- overcurrent protection (see Note 1)
- load-shedding devices
- any other safety devices.

For sets intended to operate in parallel, the correct operation of the following is also to be verified:

- reverse-power protection for a.c. installations (or reverse-current protection for d.c. installations)
- minimum voltage protection.

Note 1: Simulated tests may be used to carry out this check where appropriate.

5.1.5 The satisfactory operation of the emergency source of power and of the transitional source of power, when required, is to be tested. In particular, the automatic starting and the automatic connection to the emergency switchboard, in case of failure of the main source of electrical power, are to be tested.

5.2 Switchgear

5.2.1 All switchgear is to be loaded and, when found necessary by the attending Surveyor, the operation of overcurrent protective devices is to be verified (see Note 1).

Note 1: The workshop test is generally considered sufficient to ensure that such apparatus will perform as required while in operation.

5.2.2 Short-circuit tests may also be required at the discretion of the Society in order to verify the selectivity characteristics of the installation.

5.3 Consuming devices

5.3.1 Electrical equipment is to be operated under normal service conditions (though not necessarily at full load or simultaneously) to verify that it is suitable and satisfactory for its purpose.

5.3.2 Motors and their starters are to be tested under normal operating conditions to verify that the following are satisfactory:

- power
- operating characteristics
- commutation (if any)
- speed
- direction of rotation
- alignment.

5.3.3 The remote stops foreseen are to be tested.

5.3.4 Lighting fittings, heating appliances etc. are to be tested under operating conditions to verify that they are suitable and satisfactory for their purposes (with particular regard to the operation of emergency lighting).

5.4 Communication systems

5.4.1 Communication systems, order transmitters and mechanical engine-order telegraphs are to be tested to verify their suitability.

5.5 Installations in areas with a risk of explosion

5.5.1 Installations and the relevant safety certification are to be examined to ensure that they are of a type permitted in the various areas and that the integrity of the protection concept has not been impaired.

5.6 Voltage drop

5.6.1 Where it is deemed necessary by the attending Surveyor, the voltage drop is to be measured to verify that the permissible limits are not exceeded (see Sec 3, [9.11.4]).

APPENDIX 1 INDIRECT TEST METHOD FOR SYNCHRONOUS MACHINES

1 General

1.1 Test method

1.1.1 The machine is to subjected to the three separate running tests specified below (see Fig 1) when it is completed (with covers, heat exchangers, all control devices and sensors), the exciter circuit is connected to its normal supply or to a separate supply having the same characteristics, and the supply is fitted with the necessary measuring instruments:

- Test N° 1: No load test at rated voltage and current on rotor, stator winding in open circuit. The temperature rise of the stator winding depends, in such case, on the magnetic circuit losses and mechanical losses due to ventilation, where:
  - Δt_{s1} is the stator temperature rise
  - Δt_{r1} is the rotor temperature rise
- Test N° 2: Rated stator winding current with the terminals short-circuited. The temperature of the stator winding depends on the thermal Joule losses and mechanical losses, as above, where:
  - Δt_{s2} is the stator temperature rise
  - Δt_{r2} is the rotor temperature rise, which for test N° 2 is negligible
- Test N° 3: Zero excitation. The temperature of all windings depends on the mechanical losses due to friction and ventilation, where:
  - Δt_{s3} is the stator temperature rise
  - Δt_{r3} is the rotor temperature rise.

Note 1: The synchronous electric motor is supplied at its rated speed by a driving motor. The temperature balance will be considered as being obtained, when the temperature rise does not vary by more than 1°C per hour.

1.1.2 Temperature measurements of the stator winding can be based on the use of embedded temperature sensors or measurement of winding resistance. When using the resistance method for calculation of the temperature rise, the resistance measurement is to be carried out as soon as the machine is shut down.

The rotor temperature rise is obtained by calculation of rotor resistance, $R_{rotor} = (U/I)_r$, where U and I are the voltage and current in the magnetic field winding.

The following parameters are recorded, every 1/2 hour:

- temperature sensors as well as the stator current and voltage
- the main field voltage and current
- the bearing temperatures (embedded sensor or thermometer), and the condition of cooling of the bearings, which are to be compared to those expected on board.

1.1.3 The tests described above allow the determination of the final temperature rise of stator and rotor windings with an acceptable degree of accuracy.

- The temperature rise of the stator winding is estimated as follows:

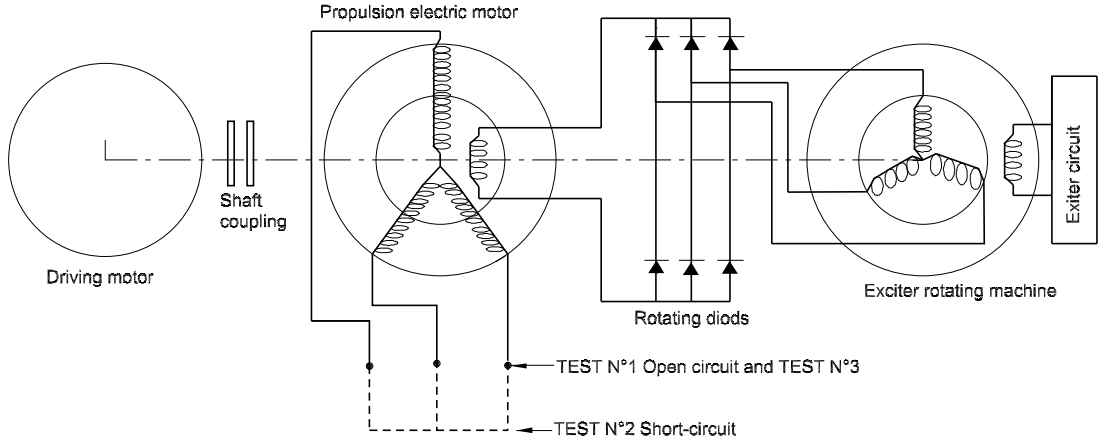
  $\Delta t_{stator} = \Delta t_{s1} + \Delta t_{s2} - \Delta t_{s3}$

  Δt_{stator} winding is to be corrected by the supplementary temperature rise due to current harmonics evaluated by the manufacturer
- Considering that in test N° 1 the magnetic field winding current Irt is different from the manufacturer's estimated value Ir (due to the fact that the cos φ in operation is not equal to 1), the temperature rise of the rotor is to be corrected as follows:

  Δt_{rotor} = ($\Delta t_{r1} - \Delta t_{r3}$) x (rated loading conditions Ir/ test loading conditions Irt)^2 + Δt_{r3}

1.1.4 In the indirect method, a possible mutual influence of the temperature rise between the stator and the rotor is not taken into consideration. The test results may be representative of the temperature rise on board ship, but a margin of 10 to 15°C is advisable compared with the permitted temperature of the Rules and the measure obtained during tests.

Figure 1 : Schematic diagram used for the test



APPENDIX 2 BATTERY POWERED SHIPS

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 *(1/1/2019)*

The provisions of this Appendix apply to ships where batteries, other than Lead and Nickel-Cadmium batteries, are installed to supply essential or not-essential services and emergency services, except batteries embedded in consumer products like computers and similar appliances.

1.1.2 *(1/1/2019)*

The requirements in this Appendix are applicable to installations with a variety of lithium battery chemistry; since the battery technology is under development, additional requirements may be required by the Society on a case by case basis.

1.1.3 *(1/1/2019)*

The Society may consider different requirements from those stated in this Appendix, provided that they ensure an equivalent level of safety, to be demonstrated by appropriate risk analysis techniques.

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 *(1/1/2019)*

The following definitions and abbreviations are additional to those given in the other Parts of the Rules:

- Battery Management System (BMS): an electronic system that controls and monitors the state of the batteries by protecting the batteries from operating outside its safe operating area.
- Energy Management System (EMS): a system providing monitoring and control of the energy.
- Cell: an individual electrochemical unit of a battery consisting of electrodes, separators, electrolyte, container and terminals.
- Battery: assembly of cells ready for use as storage of electrical energy characterized by its voltage, size terminal arrangement, capacity and rate capability.
- Battery space: compartments (rooms, lockers or boxes) used primarily for accommodation of lithium batteries properly constructed and efficiently ventilated and cooled in such a way to keep the battery system at a specified set of environmental conditions.
- Battery system: the whole battery installation including battery banks, electrical interconnections, BMS and other safety features.
- State of Charge (SOC): state of charge in percentage of the rated capacity available for the discharge of the battery.
- State of Health (SOH): general condition of a battery, including its ability to deliver the specified performance compared with a new battery.
- Venting: release of excessive internal pressure from a cell/battery in a manner intended by design to preclude rupture or explosion.
- Explosion: failure that occurs when a cell container or battery case opens violently and major components are forcibly expelled.
- Fire: the emission of flames from a cell or battery.
- Upper limit of the charging voltage: the highest charging voltage in the cell operating region as specified by the cell Manufacturer.

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 *(1/1/2019)*

In addition to the documents required in Sec 1, for battery powered ships the plans and documents listed in Tab 1 are to be submitted.

The Society reserves the right to request the submission of additional documents in the case of non-conventional design or if it is deemed necessary for the evaluation of the systems and components.

2 System design

2.1 General

2.1.1 *(1/1/2019)*

Battery installations may replace generator sets in the main source of electrical power on condition that the capacity of the battery installation is sufficient for the intended operation of the ship and such design capacity is stated in the class certificate as an operational limitation.

2.1.2 *(1/1/2019)*

In ships or units where the main source of electrical power is based on battery installations only, the battery installation is to be divided into at least two independent battery systems located in two separate battery spaces, each having a capacity sufficient for the intended operation of the ship.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted *(1/1/2019)*

No.	A/I	Document
1	A	Block diagram and electrical wiring diagram of the battery system and system interfaces to the battery system, including control, monitoring and alarm system, emergency shutdown, etc.
2	I	Functional description of the controls and mechanisms to enhance battery safety, such as battery management system (BMS), energy management system (EMS), shutdown mechanism, etc.
3	I	A risk assessment which cover all potential hazards represented by the type (chemistry) of batteries, the evaluation of the risk factors and measures to control and reduce the identified risks. Note: for the Risk Assessment reference is to be made to Tasneef "Guide for Risk Analysis".
4	A	Test programs which is to include functional tests (alarm system, safety system, control system, etc.) per [5] and further tests, if any, resulting from the Risk Assessment for the specific lithium battery system.
5	A	Electrical load balance capable to reflect the operational mode stated in the system operating philosophy (max- imum designed deterioration rate is to be included).
6	I	A general arrangement plan of battery installation including the indication of structural fire protection and the safety systems **(2) (3)**.
7	I	Description of cell/battery design including at least electrical characteristics (e.g. voltage, capacity, etc.), safety devices, cell/batteries configuration, battery chemistry, method of activation, discharge and recharge rates for the batteries, etc.
8	I	Technical specification of the lithium batteries, including data and environmental conditions.
9	I	Test report which is to detail the results of all tests detailed in the approved Test program.
10	I	Software description including description of the basic and communication software installed in each hard- ware unit, description of application software, description of functions, performance, constraints and dependencies between modules or other components and user manual including instructions during software maintenance.
11	I	An overall description of the propulsion and power installation and of operating philosophy for each operational mode (including charging) when battery installation is used as storage of power for the propulsion system or as part of the main source of electrical power.
12	I	Operation and maintenance manuals (see [5.2]).
13	A	Hazardous area classification (if applicable to the specific battery chemistry) and list of certified safety type electrical equipment installed in hazardous areas (as applicable).

(1) A: to be submitted for approval I: to be submitted for information

(2) Where a battery space is provided, based on the Risk Assessment (see [4.2]), evidence of the solution adopted for the battery space is to be given in the ship's active and passive fire protection, gas detection system and ventilation system drawings.

(3) The plan has to show:

- the battery pack arrangement with respect of the space it is being installed in
- the clearance distances between the other ancillary equipment in the space and the battery pack.

2.1.3 *(1/1/2019)*

When batteries are used as storage of power for the propulsion or dynamic positioning system or as part of the main source of electrical power, an Energy Management System (EMS) is to be provided.

2.1.4 *(1/1/2019)*

Where the batteries are used for propulsion and steering of the ship, the system is to be so arranged that the electrical supply to equipment necessary for propulsion and steering will be maintained or immediately restored in the case of battery system failure.

2.1.5 *(1/1/2019)*

Cables connecting battery system to the main switchboard are to be arranged as per Sec 11, [5.2].

2.1.6 *(1/1/2019)*

A Risk Assessment, to be initiated in the design phase, is to be carried out to cover, but not limited to:

- evaluation of the risk factors,
- measures to control and reduce the identified risk, including potential gas development (e.g. toxic, corrosive), fire and explosion risk and
- action to be implemented.

The outcome of the assessment will give the additional measures to be adopted for minimizing the risks related to the use of battery and among such measures will also establish if the battery system needs to be installed in a space assigned to batteries only.

2.1.7 *(1/1/2019)*

The risk assessment has:

- to identify risks due to external heating, fire or flooding
- to identify any fault in the battery system that may cause malfunction to essential or emergency services and has to mitigate the related risk with appropriate measures,
- to evaluate any risk related to the location, in the same space, of batteries and other systems supporting ship's essential or emergency services, including pipes and electrical cables, distribution switchboards and so on,
- to identify measures to prevent loss of propulsion, steering and emergency services upon failure such as thermal runaway of the battery system,
- to address battery component thermal runaway, cell-balancing, external and internal short-circuit,
- to address sensor failures (e.g. temperature measurement sensor failure, individual cell voltage measurement sensor failure) and alarm, control and safety system failures (e.g. BMS and EMS failures including power and communication failures).

2.1.8 *(1/1/2019)*

Battery cells of different physical characteristics, chemistries and electrical parameters are not to be used in the same electrical circuit.

2.1.9 *(1/1/2019)*

The batteries are to be properly located (see [4]) and, where necessary, insulated to prevent overheating of the system.

2.1.10 *(1/1/2019)*

The minimum required degree of protection, in relation to place of installation of the battery system, is that specified in Sec 3, [4].

2.2 Constructional requirements

2.2.1 *(1/1/2019)*

Battery enclosure covering modules and cells are to be made of flame retardant materials.

2.2.2 *(1/1/2019)*

Each cell or battery case is to incorporate a pressure relief mechanism or is to be constructed in such a way to relieve excessive internal pressure at a value and rate that will be precluded rupture, explosion and self-ignition.

2.2.3 *(1/1/2019)*

A thermal protection device, capable to disconnect the battery in case of high temperature, is to be provided in the battery.

2.2.4 *(1/1/2019)*

The design and construction of battery modules have to reduce the risk of a thermal propagation from cell to cell due to a cell thermal runaway, maintaining it confined at the lowest possible level (e.g. confined within a module). This may be achieved by means of partition plates or sufficient distance in accordance with maker recommendation to prevent escalation between battery modules in case of a thermal runaway.

2.2.5 *(1/1/2019)*

Terminals are to have clear polarity marking on the external surface of the battery. The size and shape of the terminal contacts are to ensure that they can carry the maximum current. External terminal contact surfaces are to be made of conductive materials with good mechanical strength and corrosion resistance. Terminal contacts are to be arranged so as to minimize the risk of short circuits.

2.2.6 *(1/1/2019)*

The battery system is to be provided with a Battery Management System (BMS). The battery charger is to be interfaced with and controlled by the BMS.

2.3 Electrical protection

2.3.1 *(1/1/2019)*

Each battery is to be protected against overload and short-circuit in each separate circuit by means of fuses or multipole circuit breakers having isolating capabilities.

2.3.2 *(1/1/2019)*

An emergency shutdown system is to be installed and capable to disconnect the battery system in an emergency.

2.3.3 *(1/1/2019)*

Each circuit supplied by a battery system is to be provided with:

- switchgear for isolating purposes
- over current protection, up to short circuit protection.

2.3.4 *(1/1/2019)*

If the battery system is composed by paralleled strings, each string of batteries is to be provided with individual protection.

The complete battery is to be provided with a disconnecting device between the battery system and the DC distribution.

2.4 Battery charger

2.4.1 *(1/1/2019)*

The battery charger is to be designed to operate without exceeding the limits given by the battery system Manufacturer (e.g. current and voltage level).

2.4.2 *(1/1/2019)*

Communication between battery charger and battery management system is to be implemented.

2.4.3 *(1/1/2019)*

Any failure in the battery charger, including charging failure, is to give an alarm.

3 Control, monitoring, alarm and safety systems

3.1 General

3.1.1 *(1/1/2019)*

For the purpose of these rules, unless differently state in the text, a required alarm is to be intended as an audible and visual alarm and is to be given in a continuously manned control position.

3.1.2 *(1/1/2019)*

Electronic and programmable equipment and systems are to be type approved or type tested according to Ch 3, Sec 6.

3.2 Battery management systems (BMS)

3.2.1 *(1/1/2019)*

The BMS and related monitoring and safety systems (see [3.4]) are to have self-check facilities.

In the event of a failure, an alarm is to be activated.

3.2.2 *(1/1/2019)*

The BMS is to be continuously powered so that a single failure of the power supply system does not cause any degradation of the BMS functionality; an alarm is to be given in the event of failure of any of the power supplies.

Unless the power supply is derived from different strings of batteries, one of the power supplies is to be derived from the emergency source of electrical power.

Where each battery is fitted with a BMS card, the individual cards may have a single power supply from the relevant battery.

An alarm is to be given and safety action taken in the event of loss of all the power supplies.

3.2.3 *(1/1/2019)*

The BMS is to provide limits and monitor as appropriate at least:

- charging/discharging of the battery,
- battery temperature and
- cell to cell balancing.

3.2.4 *(1/1/2019)*

The following parameters are to be continuously monitored and indications are to be provided at a local control panel and in a continuously manned control position:

- cell voltage,
- cell temperature,
- battery current,
- ambient temperature,
- availability of cooling system (e.g. of the ventilation system or of the liquid cooling system).

3.2.5 *(1/1/2019)*

When battery system is used as storage of power for the propulsion system or as part of the main source of electrical power, State of Charge (SOC) and State of Health (SOH) of the batteries are to be displayed at a continuously manned control station.

3.3 Alarm system

3.3.1 *(1/1/2019)*

The alarm system is to be continuously powered and an alarm is to be given in the event of failure of the normal power supply.

3.3.2 *(1/1/2019)*

Failure within alarm system, including outside connections, is to activate an alarm.

3.3.3 *(1/1/2019)*

Abnormal conditions which can develop into safety hazards are to be alarmed before reaching the hazardous level.

3.3.4 *(1/1/2019)*

Any abnormal condition in the battery system is to initiate an alarm.

3.3.5 *(1/1/2019)*

The following conditions or events have to initiate an alarm:

- operation of the battery protective device,
- high cell temperature,
- high ambient temperature,
- failure of ventilation system or liquid cooling system,
- cell under and overvoltage,
- high cell pressure or opening of cell safety venting device
- intervention of the Emergency Shutdown System of the battery system.

Other possible abnormal conditions are to be considered on the basis of the outcome of the Risk Assessment (see [2.1.6]) and relevant mitigating measures are to be adopted (e.g. gas detection, smoke detection, heat detection, overcurrent, ventilation failure, undervoltage, voltage unbalance between battery cells, charging failure, etc.).

3.3.6 *(1/1/2019)*

When batteries are used as storage of power for the propulsion or dynamic positioning systems or as part of the main source of electrical power, an alarm is to be given on the bridge when State of Charge (SOC) reaches minimum required capacity for ship intended operations.

3.4 Safety system

3.4.1 *(1/1/2019)*

The safety systems are to be:

- designed so as to limit the consequence of internal failures (e.g. failure in the safety system is not to cause shut down of battery system)
- self-monitoring,
- capable to act on the controlled system following the fail-to safety principle,
- capable of detecting sensor malfunctions.

3.4.2 *(1/1/2019)*

The safety systems are to be activated automatically in the event of identified conditions which could lead to damage of the battery system. Activation of any automatic safety actions is to activate an alarm. Manual override of safety functions is not to be possible.

3.4.3 *(1/1/2019)*

Voltage of any one of the single cells is not to exceed the upper limit of the charging voltage as specified by the cell Manufacturer. The battery charger is to be stopped when the upper limit of the charging voltage is exceeded for any one of the single cells.

3.4.4 *(1/1/2019)*

The emergency shutdown (ESD) is to be arranged as a separated hardwired circuit and it is to be independent from the control system.

3.4.5 *(1/1/2019)*

Activation means of the ESD are to be provided locally, from outside the battery space, and from a continuously manned control station.

3.4.6 *(1/1/2019)*

When battery installation is used as storage of power for the propulsion or dynamic positioning systems or as part of the main source of electrical power, the emergency shutdown is also to be located on the bridge.

3.4.7 *(1/1/2019)*

When battery installation is used as storage of power for the propulsion or DP systems or as part of the main source of electrical power, in case of over temperature in the battery system, an alarm and a request of manual load reduction is to be given on the bridge at a temperature lower than the one causing intervention of the BMS. As an alternative an automatic load reduction system may be provided. Its intervention is to generate an alarm.

3.4.8 *(1/1/2019)*

Other possible abnormal conditions, which could lead to damage or additional hazards to battery system, are to be considered on the basis of the outcome of the Risk Assessment.

3.4.9 *(1/1/2019)*

Sensors are to be designed to withstand the local environment.

3.4.10 *(1/1/2019)*

The enclosure of the sensor and the cable entry are to be appropriate to the space in which they are located.

3.4.11 *(1/1/2019)*

Sensors for safety functions are to be independent from sensors used for other purposes (e.g. for control, indication and alarm systems), unless the effect of sensor loss on safety of the battery system and on essential or emergency services is within the acceptance criteria of the risk analysis per [2.1.7].

3.4.12 *(1/1/2019)*

Cables to be operable under fire conditions (e.g. where required as result of the Risk Assessment), are to be of a fire-resistant type complying with IEC Publication 60331 series.

3.5 Energy Management system

3.5.1 *(1/1/2019)*

An energy management system (EMS) is to be provided complying with the requirements of Chapter 3 consisting of several levels of controls and alarm functions, such as:

- monitoring and alarm functions of all power sources, inverters and disconnectors;
- voltage and power control for DC distribution system;
- available power and charge/discharge status of the storage energy source;
- interface with Power Management System (PMS) for combinations of AC and DC distribution systems;
- inverter control for the overall system.

The energy management system (EMS) is to be independent from:

- the power management system (PMS), and
- the battery management system (BMS) for lithium batteries.

The energy management system is to be redundant and redundancy is to be ensured also to the relevant power supplies. It is to be continuously supplied by uninterruptible power supply systems (UPS) and a failure is to initiate an alarm in a manned location.

The energy management system is to be type tested or type approved according to the tests listed in Ch 3, Sec 6, Tab 1, as far as applicable.

3.5.2 *(1/1/2019)*

The EMS is to be capable to provide at least the following information on the bridge:

- energy available from batteries (SOC),
- power available from batteries,
- time or range for which the battery can provide energy according to actual operational conditions,
- alarm for minimum capacity reached,
- battery state of health (SOH).

4 Location

4.1 General

4.1.1 *(1/1/2019)*

Battery spaces are to be arranged aft of collision bulkhead and in such a way that danger to persons and damage to vessel due to failure of the batteries (e.g. caused by gassing, explosion, and fire) is minimized.

4.1.2 *(1/1/2019)*

Batteries are not to be located in a battery box on the open deck exposed to sun and frost.

They are to be located where they are not exposed to excessive heat, extreme cold, spray, steam, shocks or vibration or other conditions which would impair their safety, performance or accelerate deterioration.

4.1.3 *(1/1/2019)*

Batteries are to be located in such a way that the ambient temperature remains within the Manufacturer's specification at all times.

4.1.4 *(1/1/2019)*

Batteries are to be suitably housed by means of compartments (rooms, lockers or boxes) used primarily for their accommodation which are to be properly constructed and efficiently ventilated and cooled (as necessary).

4.1.5 *(1/1/2019)*

Battery system is to be arranged following the Manufacturer's prescriptions in particular to prevent cascade effects in case of a thermal runaway (e.g. partition plates or distance in accordance with Manufacturer's recommendations).

4.1.6 *(1/1/2019)*

Batteries, used as storage of power for the propulsion or dynamic positioning systems or as part of the main source of electrical power, are to be located in a battery space

placed within the borders of the main machinery space or adjacent to it.

4.1.7 *(1/1/2019)*

Depending on the battery chemistry, it may be necessary to define a hazardous area for the installation of appropriate equipment (see Tab 1 No. 6).

4.1.8 *(1/1/2019)*

The battery space is not to contain other systems supporting essential or emergency services, including piping and electric cables serving such systems, in order to prevent their loss upon possible failures (e.g. thermal runaway) in the battery system, unless the potential loss of essential or emergency services is within the acceptance criteria of the risk analysis per [2.1.6].

4.2 Battery space

4.2.1 *(1/1/2019)*

When required, based on [4.1.6] or the Risk Assessment (see [2.1.6]), a space assigned to batteries only is to be foreseen.

4.2.2 *(1/1/2019)*

Access to this space is to be through self-closing doors. As an alternative normally closed doors with alarm may be considered.

4.2.3 *(1/1/2019)*

External hazards, such as fire and water ingress are to be taken into account in the Risk Assessment, in order to assess the risk associated with an external event (e.g. a fire spreading from adjacent rooms to the battery space, water flooding and so on) and possible countermeasures (e.g. suitable segregation of the battery space).

No heat sources or high fire risk equipment are to be located in battery spaces.

4.2.4 *(1/1/2019)*

A fire detection system and a fixed fire extinguishing system appropriate to the battery chemistry are to be provided in the battery space.

The type of is to be chosen following the battery Manufacturer's instructions.

Examples of fire extinguishing systems may be a powder or a gas based or water-based fixed fire extinguishing system provided that the suitability of the extinguishing agent for the specific type of batteries is confirmed by the battery Manufacturer and its use does not produce corrosive, toxic or harmful substances.

Automatic release is only acceptable for small, not accessible, battery spaces.

Where an automatic release of fire extinguishing media is accepted, its activation is to be confirmed by more than one sensor.

4.2.5 *(1/1/2019)*

The battery space ventilation system is to be:

- independent from any other ventilation system serving other ship's spaces,
- provided with local manual stop, still available in case of failure of the automatic and or remote control system,
- provided with indication of ventilation running and of battery space ambient temperature.

4.2.6 *(1/1/2019)*

Appropriate means to maintain the battery working temperature within the Manufacturer's declared limits are to be provided (e.g. by means of liquid cooled solutions or ventilation systems provided with control of air temperature).

4.2.7 *(1/1/2019)*

In case of liquid cooled solutions, the ventilation system is required not for maintaining the working temperature within the Manufacturer's declared limits, but to extract possible gases or vapours in consequence of a battery abnormal condition.

4.2.8 *(1/1/2019)*

Depending on the battery chemistry, a gas detection system, for the gases that may be emitted from the battery system in the event of a serious fault, may be requested as an outcome of the risk assessment.

In this case,

- an alarm at 30% of LEL and automatic disconnection of batteries are to be provided,
- an alarm at 60% of LEL and automatic disconnection of all electrical equipment non certified of safety type for the specific hazardous area, gas, vapour are to be provided.

A failure in the gas detection system is to be alarmed but is not to cause above mentioned automatic disconnections.

4.2.9 *(1/1/2019)*

Depending on the battery chemistry, appropriate ventilation to prevent the formation of explosive atmospheres in the battery space (e.g. to limit the concentration of flammable gasses and thereby reduce the risk for fire) is to be provided.

At this purpose the highest rate of gas emissions from the single cell is to be considered.

4.2.10 *(1/1/2019)*

Depending on the battery chemistry, when a hazardous area is to be considered, mechanical exhaust non-sparking fan driven by a certified safe type electric motor, and inlet from open air are to be arranged.

4.2.11 *(1/1/2019)*

Battery spaces on passenger ships carrying more than 36 passengers are to be treated as a cat.11 space (auxiliary machinery space with high fire risk).

4.2.12 *(1/1/2019)*

Battery spaces on passenger ships carrying not more than 36 passengers, cargo shipsare to be insulated in way of other spaces as indicated in Tab 2.

4.2.13 *(1/1/2019)*

Battery spaces are to be considered as spaces not normally manned.

Table 2 *(1/1/2019)*

Bulk-head	Con-trol Station 1	Corri-dor 2	Accom-moda-tion spaces 3	Stair-ways 4	Service spaces (low risk) 5	Machi n- ery Space of cat A 6	Machi n- ery Space 7	Cargo 8	Service spaces (high risk) 9	Open deck 10	Special cate-gory/ Roro spaces 11	Muster stations
Li Bat-tery Space	A60	A15	A30	A15	A0	A60	A0	A60	A30	A0	A60	A60
Li Bat-tery Space Below	A60	A60	A30	A60	A0	A60	A0	A60	A30	A0	A60	A60
Li Bat-tery Space Above	A0	A0	A0	A0	A0	A60	A0	A60	A0	A0	A60	A60

5 Testing and inspection

5.1 Testing

5.1.1 *(1/1/2019)*

Battery systems are to be tested by the Manufacturer.

5.1.2 *(1/1/2019)*

Battery systems having a capacity of 50 kWh or above are to be tested at the presence of a Tasneef surveyor.

However, where the testing laboratory is an independent and recognized laboratory complying with the Chapter 5, item [3] of Tasneef "Rules for testing, Certification and Acceptance of Marine Materials and Equipment", the tests may be carried out without the presence of a Tasneef surveyor.

Relevant Test Reports are to be submitted for acceptance.

5.1.3 *(1/1/2019)*

Battery system associated electronic equipment is to be suitable for use in a marine environment: for this purposes tests are to be carried out according to Ch 3, Sec 6, Tab 1.

5.1.4 *(1/1/2019)*

Batteries are to be subjected to functional and safety tests according to IEC Publication 62619 and 62620 or in accordance with other equivalent national or international standards.

5.1.5 *(1/1/2019)*

Battery chargers are to be tested according to Sec 7 and in addition the correct operation of the communication system between the charger and the BMS is to be verified. Details of relevant tests are to be indicated in the Test Programs (see Tab 1 No. 4).

5.1.6 *(1/1/2019)*

Performance tests are to be carried out on the battery system according to a test program which is to be submitted for approval (see [1.3.1]) and which is to include functional tests (alarm system, safety system, control system, etc.) and further tests, if any, resulting from the Risk Assessment.

5.1.7 *(1/1/2019)*

When battery installation is used as storage of power for the propulsion or dynamic positioning systems or as part of the main source of electrical power, tests for the verification of the battery SOH are to be carried out (e.g. complete charge/discharge cycle or other methods as per Manufacturer's indications).

5.1.8 *(1/1/2019)*

For type approved products, tests to verify the conformity of the product with the approved prototype are to be carried out before installation on board; the tests are to be carried out according to a test program which is to include functional tests (alarm system, safety system, control system, etc.) and further tests, if any, resulting from the Risk Assessment.

5.2 Plans to be kept on board

5.2.1 *(1/1/2019)*

An operation manual is to be kept on board which includes at least:

- charging procedure,
- normal operation procedures,
- emergency operation procedures,
- estimated battery deterioration (ageing) rate curves, considering modes of operation.

5.2.2 *(1/1/2019)*

A maintenance manual for systematic maintenance and functional testing is to be kept on board.

The plan is to include at least:

- tests on all the equipment affecting the battery system (e.g. instrumentation, sensors, etc.),
- recommended test intervals to reduce the probability of failure,
- functional tests of control, monitoring, safety and alarm system,
- verification of the State of Health (SOH),
- instructions for Software Maintenance.

5.3 Testing and inspection after installation on board

5.3.1 *(1/1/2019)*

After installation, and after any important repair or alteration which may affect the safety of the arrangement, following a check of compliance with the plans, the battery system is to be subjected at least to the following tests and inspections, to the satisfaction of the Surveyor in charge:

- visual inspection,
- operational tests,
- tests of all the alarms and safety functions,
- charging and discharging capacities,
- emergency shutdown operation,
- checking of operation of sensors, including simulation of changes in parameters and simulation of sensor failure,
- simulation of communication failure,
- insulation resistance test,
- correct operation of ventilation, cooling, gas detection system, fire detection system and fire extinguishing system, etc., where provided.

Part C
Machinery, Systems and Fire Protection

Chapter 3
AUTOMATION

SECTION 1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 2 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 3 COMPUTER BASED SYSTEMS

SECTION 4 CONSTRUCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 5 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 6 TESTING

SECTION 1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1 General

1.1 Field of application

1.1.1 The following requirements apply to automation systems, installed on all ships, intended for essential services as defined in Ch 2, Sec 1. They also apply to systems required in Chapter 1 and Chapter 2, installed on all ships.

1.1.2 This chapter is intended to avoid that failures or malfunctions of automation systems associated with essential and non-essential services cause danger to other essential services.

1.1.3 Requirements for unattended machinery spaces and for additional notations are specified in Part F.

1.2 Regulations and standards

1.2.1 The regulations and standards applicable are those defined in Ch 2, Sec 1.

1.3 Definitions

1.3.1 Unless otherwise stated, the terms used in this chapter have the definitions laid down in Ch 2, Sec 1 or in the IEC standards. The following definitions also apply:

- Alarm indicator is an indicator which gives a visible and/or audible warning upon the appearance of one or more faults to advise the operator that his attention is required.
- Alarm system is a system intended to give a signal in the event of abnormal running condition.
- Application software is a software performing tasks specific to the actual configuration of the programmable electronic system and supported by the basic software.
- Automatic control is the control of an operation without direct or indirect human intervention, in response to the occurrence of predetermined conditions.
- Automation systems are systems including control systems and monitoring systems.
- Basic software is the minimum software, which includes firmware and middleware, required to support the application software.
- Cold standby system is a duplicated system with a manual commutation or manual replacement of cards which are live and non-operational. The duplicated system is to be able to achieve the operation of the main system with identical performance, and be operational within 10 minutes.
- Programmable electronic system is a system of one or more computers, associated software, peripherals and interfaces, and the computer network with its protocol.
- Control station is a group of control and monitoring devices by means of which an operator can control and verify the performance of equipment.
- Control system is a system by which an intentional action is exerted on an apparatus to attain given purposes.
- Expert system is an intelligent knowledge-based system that is designed to solve a problem with information that has been compiled using some form of human expertise.
- Fail safe is a design property of an item in which the specified failure mode is predominantly in a safe direction with regard to the safety of the ship, as a primary concern.
- Full redundant is used to describe an automation system comprising two (identical or non-identical) independent systems which perform the same function and operate simultaneously.
- Hot standby system is used to describe an automation system comprising two (identical or non-identical) independent systems which perform the same function, one of which is in operation while the other is on standby with an automatic change-over switch.
- Instrumentation is a sensor or monitoring element.
- Integrated system is a system consisting of two or more subsystems having independent functions connected by a data transmission network and operated from one or more workstations.
- Local control is control of an operation at a point on or adjacent to the controlled switching device.
- Manual control is control of an operation acting on final control devices either directly or indirectly with the aid of electrical, hydraulic or mechanical power.
- Monitoring system is a system designed to observe the correct operation of the equipment by detecting incorrect functioning (measure of variables compared with specified value).
- Safety system is a system intended to limit the consequence of failure and is activated automatically when an abnormal condition appears.
- Software is the program, procedures and associated documentation pertaining to the operation of the computer system.
- Redundancy is the existence of more than one means for performing a required function.
- Remote control is the control from a distance of apparatus by means of an electrical or other link.

1.4 General

1.4.1 The automation systems and components, as indicated in Ch 2, Sec 15, [2], are to be chosen from among the list of type approved products.

They are to be approved on the basis of the applicable requirements of these Rules and in particular those stated in this Chapter.

Case by case approval may also be granted at the discretion of the Society, based on submission of adequate documentation and subject to the satisfactory outcome of any required tests.

1.4.2 *Main and auxiliary machinery essential for the propulsion, control and safety of the ship shall be provided with effective means for its operation and control.*

1.4.3 Control, alarm and safety systems are to be based on the fail-to-safety principle.

1.4.4 Failure of automation systems is to generate an alarm.

1.4.5 Detailed indication, alarm and safety requirements regarding automation systems for individual machinery and installations are to be found in Chapter 1.

2 Documentation

2.1 General

2.1.1 Before the actual construction is commenced, the Manufacturer, Designer or Shipbuilder is to submit to the Society the documents (plans, diagrams, specifications and calculations) requested in this Section.

The list of documents requested is to be intended as guidance for the complete set of information to be submitted, rather than an actual list of titles.

The Society reserves the right to request the submission of additional documents in the case of non-conventional design or if it is deemed necessary for the evaluation of the system, equipment or components.

Plans are to include all the data necessary for their interpretation, verification and approval.

Unless otherwise agreed with the Society, documents for approval are to be sent in triplicate if submitted by the Shipyard and in four copies if submitted by the equipment supplier. Documents requested for information are to be sent in duplicate.

In any case, the Society reserves the rights to require additional copies, when deemed necessary.

2.2 Documents to be submitted

2.2.1 The documents listed in Tab 1 are to be submitted.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	I/A **(1)**	Documentation
1	A	The general specification for the automation of the ship
2	A	The detailed specification of the essential service systems
3	A	The list of components used in the automation circuits, and references (Manufacturer, type, etc.)
4	I	Instruction manuals
5	I	Test procedures for control, alarm and safety systems
6	A	A general diagram showing the monitoring and/or control positions for the various installations, with an indication of the means of access and the means of communication between the positions as well as with the engineers
7	A	The diagrams of the supply circuits of automation systems, identifying the power source
8	A	The list of monitored parameters for alarm/monitoring and safety systems
9	A	Diagram of the engineers' alarm system
(1) A = to be submitted for approval; I = to be submitted for information.		

Table 2 : Documentation to be submitted for programmable electronic systems

No.	I/A **(1)**	Documentation **(2)**
1	A	System block diagram, showing the arrangement of individual parts, input and output devices and interconnections
2	A	Wiring connection diagrams, including details of electrical power supplies, and of input and output devices
3	A	System functional description
4	I	Software system description and documentation
5	I	User interface description
6	I	Test programs
(1) A = to be submitted for approval; I = to be submitted for information. **(2)** See as guidance IEC 60092-504 clause 10.11		

2.3 Documents for programmable electronic system

2.3.1 General

For programmable electronic systems, the documents listed in Tab 2 are to be submitted.

2.3.2 System description, computer software

This documentation is to contain:

- a list of all main software modules installed per hardware unit with names and version numbers
- a description of all main software which is to include at least:
  - a description of basic software installed per hardware unit, including communication software, when applicable
  - a description of application software.

2.3.3 Description of computer hardware

The documentation to be submitted is to include:

- hardware information of importance for the application and a list of documents that apply to the system.
- the supply circuit diagram
- a description of hardware and software tools for equipment configuration
- the information to activate the system
- general information for trouble shooting and repair when the system is in operation.

2.3.4 System reliability analysis

The documentation to be submitted is to demonstrate the reliability of the system by means of appropriate analysis such as:

- a failure mode analysis describing the effects due to failures leading to the destruction of the automation system. In addition, this documentation is to show the consequences on other systems, if any. This analysis is appraised in accordance with the IEC Publication 60812, or a recognised standard
- test report /life test
- MTBF calculation (Mean Time Between Failure)
- any other documentation demonstrating the reliability of the system.

2.3.5 User interface description

The documentation is to contain:

- a description of the functions allocated to each operator interface (keyboard/screen or equivalent)
- a description of individual screen views (schematics, colour photos, etc.)
- a description of how menus are operated (tree presentation)
- an operator manual providing necessary information for installation and use.

2.3.6 Test programs

The following test programs are to be submitted:

- software module/unit test
- software integration test
- system validation test
- on-board test.

Each test program is to include:

- a description of each test item
- a description of the acceptance criteria for each test.

2.4 Documents for type approval of equipment

2.4.1 Documents to be submitted for type approval of equipment are listed hereafter:

- a request for type approval from the manufacturer or his authorized representative
- the technical specification and drawings depicting the system, its components, characteristics, working principle, installation and conditions of use and, when there is a programmable electronic system, the documents listed in Tab 2
- any test reports previously prepared by specialised laboratories.

3 Environmental and supply conditions

3.1 General

3.1.1 General

The automation system is to operate correctly when the power supply is within the range specified in Sec 2.

3.1.2 Environmental conditions

The automation system is to be designed to operate satisfactorily in the environment in which it is located. The environmental conditions are described in Ch 2, Sec 2.

3.1.3 Failure behaviour

The automation system is to have non-critical behaviour in the event of power supply failure, faults or restoration of operating condition following a fault. If a redundant power supply is used, it must be taken from an independent source.

3.2 Power supply conditions

3.2.1 Electrical power supply

The conditions of power supply to be considered are defined in Ch 2, Sec 2.

3.2.2 Pneumatic power supply

For pneumatic equipment, the operational characteristics are to be maintained under permanent supply pressure variations of ± 20% of the rated pressure.

Detailed requirements are given in Ch 1, Sec 10.

3.2.3 Hydraulic power supply

For hydraulic equipment, the operational characteristics are to be maintained under permanent supply pressure variations of ± 20% of the rated pressure.

Detailed requirements are given in Ch 1, Sec 10.

4 Materials and construction

4.1 General

4.1.1 The choice of materials and components is to be made according to the environmental and operating conditions in order to maintain the proper function of the equipment.

4.1.2 The design and construction of the automation equipment is to take into account the environmental and operating conditions in order to maintain the proper function of the equipment.

4.2 Type approved components

4.2.1 See Ch 2, Sec 15.

SECTION 2 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

1 General

1.1

1.1.1 *All control systems essential for the propulsion, control and safety of the ship shall be independent or designed such that failure of one system does not degrade the performance of another system.*

1.1.2 Controlled systems are to have manual operation.

Failure of any part of such systems shall not prevent the use of the manual override.

1.1.3 Automation systems are to have constant performance.

1.1.4 Safety functions are to be independent of control and monitoring functions. As far as practicable, control and monitoring functions are also to be independent.

1.1.5 Control, monitoring and safety systems are to have self-check facilities. In the event of failure, an alarm is to be activated.

In particular, failure of the power supply of the automation system is to generate an alarm.

1.1.6 When a programmable electronic system is used for control, alarm or safety systems, it is to comply with the requirements of Sec 3.

2 Power supply of automation systems

2.1 General

2.1.1 *(1/7/2020)*

Automation systems are to pe powered from two sources of power by means of two independent feeders. Failure of each of these power supplies is to generate an alarm.

Batteries or pneumatic or hydraulic accumulators, installed to allow the system to be continuously powered, are not considered as a duplication of the power supply.

Note 1: batteries constituting the emergency source of electrical power may be considered as one of the two required sources.

2.1.2 *(1/7/2020)*

Power supply circuits are to be such that no direct connections to any point of the ship's main power supply system are provided (e.g. by means of isolating transformers).

2.1.3 *(1/7/2020)*

Each automation system is to be have separate power supplies with short circuit and overload protection.

Safety systems are to have power supplies as far as possible separate from control and alarm system, or an equivalent safety level is to be ensured.

2.1.4 *(1/7/2020)*

In addition to what above, the automation systems are to be continuously powered by means of batteries or pneumatic or hydraulic accumulators.

2.1.5 *(1/7/2020)*

The capacity of the batteries, or pneumatic or hydraulic accumulators is to be sufficient to allow the normal operation of the alarm and safety system for at least half an hour.

3 Control systems

3.1 General

3.1.1 In the case of failure, the control systems used for essential services are to remain in their last position they had before the failure.

3.2 Local control

3.2.1 Each system is to be able to be operated manually from a position located so as to enable visual control of operation. For detailed instrumentation for each system, refer to Chapter 1and Chapter 2.

It shall also be possible to control the auxiliary machinery, essential for the propulsion and safety of the ship, at or near the machinery concerned.

3.3 Remote control systems

3.3.1 When several control stations are provided, control of machinery is to be possible at one station at a time.

3.3.2 *At each location there shall be an indicator showing which location is in control of the propulsion machinery.*

3.3.3 Remote control is to be provided with the necessary instrumentation, in each control station, to allow effective control (correct function of the system, indication of control station in operation, alarm display).

3.3.4 When transferring the control location, no significant alteration of the controlled equipment is to occur. Transfer of control is to be protected by an audible warning and acknowledged by the receiving control location. The main control location is to be able to take control without acknowledgement.

3.4 Automatic control systems

3.4.1 *Automatic starting, operational and control systems shall include provisions for manually overriding the automatic controls.*

3.4.2 Automatic control is to be stable in the range of the controller in normal working conditions.

3.4.3 Automatic control is to have instrumentation to verify the correct function of the system.

4 Control of propulsion machinery

4.1 Remote control

4.1.1 The requirements mentioned in [3] are to be applied for propulsion machinery.

4.1.2 *The design of the remote control system shall be such that in case of its failure an alarm will be given.*

4.1.3 Supply failure (voltage, fluid pressure, etc.) in propulsion plant remote control is to activate an alarm at the control position. In the event of remote control system failure and unless the Society considers it impracticable, the preset speed and direction of thrust are to be maintained until local control is in operation. This applies in particular in the case of loss of electric, pneumatic or hydraulic supply to the system.

4.1.4 *Propulsion machinery orders from the navigation bridge shall be indicated in the main machinery control room, and at the manoeuvring platform.*

4.1.5 *The control shall be performed by a single control device for each independent propeller, with automatic performance of all associated services, including, where necessary, means of preventing overload of the propulsion machinery. Where multiple propellers are designed to operate simultaneously, they must be controlled by one control device.*

4.1.6 *Indicators shall be fitted on the navigation bridge,* in *the main machinery control room and at the manoeuvring platform, for:*

propeller speed and direction of rotation in the case of fixed pitch propellers; and

propeller speed and pitch position in the case of controllable pitch propellers.

4.1.7 *The main propulsion machinery shall be provided with an emergency stopping device on the navigation bridge which shall be independent of the navigation bridge control system.*

In the event that there is no reaction to an order to stop, provision is to be made for an alternative emergency stop. This emergency stopping device may consist of a simple and clearly marked control device, for example a push-button. This fitting is to be capable of suppressing the propeller thrust, whatever the cause of the failure may be.

4.2 Remote control from navigating bridge

4.2.1 Where propulsion machinery is controlled from the navigating bridge, the remote control is to include an automatic device such that the number of operations to be carried out is reduced and their nature is simplified and such that control is possible in both the ahead and astern directions. Where necessary, means for preventing overload and running in critical speed ranges of the propulsion machinery is to be provided.

Note 1: Arrangements which are not in compliance with the provisions of this Article may be considered for the following ships:

- ships of less than 24 m in length
- cargo ships of less than 500 tons gross tonnage
- ships to be assigned restricted navigation notations
- non-propelled units.

4.2.2 On board ships fitted with remote control, direct control of the propulsion machinery is to be provided locally. The local direct control is to be independent from the remote control circuits, and takes over any remote control when in use.

4.2.3 Each local control position, including partial control (e.g. local control of controllable pitch propellers or clutches) is to be provided with means of communication with each remote control position. The local control positions are to be independent from remote control of propulsion machinery and continue to operate in the event of a blackout (see Note 1 in [4.2.1]).

4.2.4 *Remote control of the propulsion machinery shall be possible only from one location at a time; at such locations interconnected control positions are permitted.*

4.2.5 *The transfer of control between the navigating bridge and machinery spaces shall be possible only in the main machinery space or the main machinery control room. The system shall include means to prevent the propelling thrust from altering significantly, when transferring control from one location to another* (see Note 1 in [4.2.1]).

4.2.6 At the navigating bridge, the control of the routine manoeuvres for one line of shafting is to be performed by a single control device: a lever, a handwheel or a push-button board. However each mechanism contributing directly to the propulsion, such as the engine, clutch, automatic brake or controllable pitch propeller, is to be able to be individually controlled, either locally or at a central monitoring and control position in the engine room (see Note 1 in [4.2.1]).

4.2.7 Remote starting of the propulsion machinery is to be automatically inhibited if a condition exists which may damage the machinery, e.g. shaft turning gear engaged, drop of lubrication oil pressure or brake engaged.

4.2.8 As a general rule, the navigating bridge panels are not to be overloaded by alarms and indications which are not required.

4.3 Automatic control

4.3.1 The requirements in [3] are applicable. In addition, the following requirements are to be considered, if relevant.

4.3.2 *Main turbine propulsion machinery and, where applicable, main internal combustion propulsion machinery and auxiliary machinery shall be provided with automatic shutoff arrangements in the case of failures such as lubricating oil supply failure which could lead rapidly to complete breakdown, serious damage or explosion.*

4.3.3 The automatic control system is to be designed on a fail safe basis, and, in the event of failure, the system is to be adjusted automatically to a predetermined safe state.

4.3.4 When the remote control system of the propulsion machinery includes automatic starting, the number of automatic consecutive attempts is to be limited at a preset value of the starting air pressure permitting 3 attempts, and an alarm is to be provided, on the navigation bridge and in the machinery space.

4.3.5 Operations following any setting of the bridge control device (including reversing from the maximum ahead service speed in case of emergency) are to take place in an automatic sequence and with acceptable time intervals , as prescribed by the manufacturer.

4.3.6 For steam turbines, a slow turning device is to be provided which operates automatically if the turbine is stopped longer than admissible. Discontinuation of this automatic turning from the bridge is to be possible.

4.4 Automatic control of propulsion and manoeuvring units

4.4.1 When the power source actuating the automatic control of propelling units fails, an alarm is to be triggered. In such case, the preset direction of thrust is to be maintained long enough to allow the intervention of engineers. Failing this, minimum arrangements, such as stopping of the shaft line, are to be provided to prevent any unexpected reverse of the thrust. Such stopping may be automatic or ordered by the operator, following an appropriate indication.

4.5 Clutches

4.5.1 Where the clutch of a propulsion engine is operated electrically, pneumatically or hydraulically, an alarm is to be given at the control station in the event of loss of energy; as far as practicable, this alarm is to be triggered while it is still possible to operate the equipment (see Note 1 in [4.2.1]).

4.5.2 When only one clutch is installed, its control is to be fail-set. Other arrangements may be considered in relation to the configuration of the propulsion machinery.

4.6 Brakes

4.6.1 Automatic or remote controlled braking is to be possible only if:

- propulsion power has been shut off
- the turning gear is disconnected
- the shaftline speed (r.p.m.) is below the threshold stated by the builder (see Note 1 in [4.2.1]).

5 Remote control of valves

5.1

5.1.1 The following requirements are applicable to valves whose failure could impair essential services.

5.1.2 Failure of the power supply is not to permit a valve to move to an unsafe condition.

5.1.3 An indication is to be provided at the remote control station showing the actual position of the valve or whether the valve is fully open or fully closed.

5.1.4 In case of failure of manually operated or automatic remote control systems, the local control of valves is to be possible.

5.1.5 Equipment located in places which may be flooded is to be capable of operation even if submerged.

6 Alarm system

6.1 General requirements

6.1.1 Alarms are to be visual and audible and are to be clearly distinguishable, in the ambient noise and lighting in the normal position of the personnel, from any other signals.

6.1.2 Sufficient information is to be provided for proper handling of alarms.

6.1.3 The alarm system is to be of the self-check type; failure within the alarm system, including the outside connection, is to activate an alarm. The alarm circuits are to be independent from each other. All alarm circuits are to be protected so as not to endanger each other.

6.2 Alarm functions

6.2.1 Alarm activation

Alarms are to be activated when abnormal conditions appear in the machinery, which need the intervention of personnel on duty, and on the automatic change-over, when standby machines are installed.

An existing alarm is not to prevent the indication of any further fault.

6.2.2 Acknowledgement of alarm

The acknowledgment of an alarm consists in manually silencing the audible signal and additional visual signals (e.g. rotating light signals) while leaving the visual signal on the active control station. Acknowledged alarms are to be clearly distinguishable from unacknowledged alarms. Acknowledgement should not prevent the audible signal to operate for new alarm.

Alarms shall be maintained until they are accepted and visual indications of individual alarms shall remain until the fault has been corrected, when the alarm system shall automatically reset to the normal operating condition.

Acknowledgement of alarms is only to be possible at the active control station.

Alarms, including the detection of transient faults, are to be maintained until acknowledgement of the visual indication.

Acknowledgement of visual signals is to be separate for each signal or common to a limited group of signals. Acknowledgement is only to be possible when the user has visual information on the alarm condition for the signal or all signals in a group.

6.2.3 Locking of alarms

Manual locking of separate alarms may be accepted when this is clearly indicated.

Locking of alarm and safety functions in certain operating modes (e.g. during start-up or trimming) is to be automatically disabled in other modes.

6.2.4 Time delay of alarms

It is to be possible to delay alarm activation in order to avoid false alarms due to normal transient conditions (e.g. during start-up or trimming).

6.2.5 Engineers' alarm

An engineers' alarm shall be provided to be operated from the engine control room or at the manoeuvring platform as appropriate, and shall be clearly audible in the engineers' accommodation.

6.2.6 Transfer of responsibility

Where several alarm control stations located in different spaces are provided, responsibility for alarms is not to be transferred before being acknowledged by the receiving location. Transfer of responsibility is to give an audible warning. At each control station it is to be indicated which location is in charge.

6.2.7 Alarm systems with limited number of monitored positions

For alarms with a limited number of monitored positions, relaxation to the requirements of [6.2] may be granted at judgement of the Society

7 Safety system

7.1 Design

7.1.1 System failures

A safety system is to be designed so as to limit the consequence of failures. It is to be constructed on the fail-to-safety principle.

The safety system is to be of the self-check type; as a rule, failure within the safety system, including the outside connection, is to activate an alarm.

7.2 Function

7.2.1 Safety activation

The safety system is to be activated automatically in the event of identified conditions which could lead to damage of associated machinery or systems, such that:

- normal operating conditions are restored (e.g. by the starting of the standby unit), or
- the operation of the machinery is temporarily adjusted to the prevailing abnormal conditions (e.g. by reducing the output of the associated machinery), or
- the machinery is protected, as far as possible, from critical conditions by shutting off the fuel or power supply, thereby stopping the machinery (shutdown), or appropriate shutdown.

7.2.2 Safety indication

When the safety system has been activated, it is to be possible to trace the cause of the safety action. This is to be accomplished by means of a central or local indication.

When a safety system is made inoperative by a manual override, this is to be clearly indicated at corresponding control stations.

Automatic safety actions are to activate an alarm at predefined control stations.

7.3 Shutdown

7.3.1 For shutdown systems of machinery, the following requirements are to be applied:

- when the system has stopped a machine, the latter is not to be restarted automatically before a manual reset of the safety system has been carried out
- the shutdown of the propulsion system is to be limited to those cases which could lead to serious damage, complete breakdown or explosion.

7.4 Standby systems

7.4.1 For the automatic starting system of the standby units, the following requirements are to be applied:

- faults in the electrical or mechanical system of the running machinery are not to prevent the standby machinery from being automatically started
- when a machine is on standby, ready to be automatically started, this is to be clearly indicated at its control position
- the change-over to the standby unit is to be indicated by a visual and audible alarm
- means are to be provided close to the machine, to prevent undesired automatic or remote starting (e.g. when the machine is being repaired)
- automatic starting is to be prevented when conditions are present which could endanger the standby machine.

7.5 Testing

7.5.1 The safety systems are to be tested in accordance with the requirements in Sec 6.

SECTION 3 COMPUTER BASED SYSTEMS

1 Scope

1.1 General

1.1.1 *(1/7/2017)*

These Requirements apply to design, construction, commissioning and maintenance of computer based systems where they depend on software for the proper achievement of their functions and focus on the functionality of the software and on the hardware supporting the software.

1.1.2 *(1/7/2017)*

These Requirements apply to the use of computer based systems which provide control, alarm, monitoring, safety or internal communication functions which are subject to classification requirements.

1.1.3 *(1/7/2017)*

Navigation systems required by SOLAS Chapter V, Radiocommunication systems required by SOLAS Chapter IV, and vessel loading instrument/stability computer are not in the scope of these Requirements.

Note 1: For loading instrument/stability computer, Rec No. 48 may be considered.

1.2 Reference to other regulations and standards

1.2.1 *(1/7/2017)*

The following standards may be used for the development of hardware/software of computer based systems:

- IEC 61508 "Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety related Systems"
- ISO/IEC 12207 "Systems and software engineering - Software life cycle processes"
- ISO 9001:2008 "Quality Management Systems - Requirements"
- ISO/IEC 90003 "Software engineering - Guidelines for the application of ISO 9001:2008 to computer software"
- IEC 60092-504 "Electrical installations in ships - Part 504: Special features - Control and instrumentation"
- ISO/IEC 25000 "Systems and software engineering - Systems and software Quality Requirements and Evaluation (SQuaRE) - Guide to SQuaRE"
- ISO/IEC 25041 "Systems and software engineering - Systems and software Quality Requirements and Evaluation (SQuaRE) - Evaluation guide for developers, acquirers and independent evaluators"
- IEC 61511 "Functional safety - Safety instrumented systems for the process industry sector"
- ISO/IEC 15288 "Systems and software engineering - system life cycle process".

Other industry standards may be considered.

1.3 Definitions

1.3.1 Owner *(1/7/2017)*

The Owner is responsible for contracting the system integrator and/or suppliers to provide a hardware system including software according to the Owner's specification. The Owner could be the Ship Builder Integrator (Builder or Shipyard) during initial construction. After vessel delivery, the Owner may delegate some responsibilities to the vessel operating company.

1.3.2 System integrator *(1/7/2017)*

The role of system integrator is to be taken by the yard unless an alternative organization is specifically contracted/assigned this responsibility. The system integrator is responsible for the integration of systems and products provided by suppliers into the system invoked by the Requirements specified herein and for providing the integrated system.

The system integrator may also be responsible for integration of systems in the vessel.If there are multiple parties performing system integration at any one time, a single party is to be responsible for overall system integration and coordinating the integration activities.

If there are multiple stages of integration different System Integrators may be responsible for specific stages of integration, but a single party is to be responsible for defining and coordinating all of the stages of integration.

1.3.3 Supplier *(1/7/2017)*

The Supplier is any contracted or subcontracted provider of system components or software under the coordination of the System Integrator or Shipyard.

The supplier is responsible for providing programmable devices, sub-systems or systems to the system integrator.

The supplier provides a description of the software functionality that meets the Owner's specification, applicable international and national standards, and the Requirements specified herein.

1.3.4 System *(1/7/2017)*

Combination of interacting programmable devices and/or sub-systems organized to achieve one or more specified purposes.

1.3.5 Sub-system *(1/7/2017)*

Identifiable part of a system, which may perform a specific function or set of functions.

1.3.6 Programmable device *(1/7/2017)*

Physical component where software is installed.

1.3.7 Software module *(1/7/2017)*

A module is a standalone piece of code that provides specific and closely coupled functionality.

1.3.8 Simulation tests *(1/7/2017)*

Control system testing where the equipment under control is partly or fully replaced with simulation tools, or where parts of the communication network and lines are replaced with simulation tools.

2 System category

2.1

2.1.1 *(1/7/2017)*

Computer based systems are to be assigned into three system categories as shown in Tab 1 based on their effects on system functionality.

Table 1 : System categories *(1/7/2017)*

Category	Effects	System functionality
I	Those systems, failure of which will not lead to dangerous situations for human safety, safety of the vessel and/or a threat to the environment.	Monitoring function for informational / administrative tasks
II	Those systems, failure of which could eventually lead to dangerous situations for human safety, safety of the vessel and/or a threat to the environment.	• Alarm and monitoring functions • Control functions which are necessary to maintain the ship in its normal operational and habitable conditions
III	Those systems, failure of which could immediately lead to dangerous situations for human safety, safety of the vessel and/or a threat to the environment.	• Control functions for maintaining the vessel's propulsion and steering • Vessel safety functions

2.1.2 *(1/7/2017)*

The following systems typically belong to Category III, the exact category being dependent on the risk assessment for all operational scenarios:

- Propulsion system of a ship, meaning the means to generate and control mechanical thrust in order to move the ship (devices used only during manoeuvring are not in the scope of this requirement such as bow tunnel thrusters)
- Steering system control system
- Electric power system (including power management system)
- Ship safety systems covering fire detection and fighting, flooding detection and fighting, internal communication systems involved in evacuation phases, ship systems involved in operation of life saving appliances equipment
- Dynamic positioning system for DP2 and DP3 class notation (see Pt F, Ch 13, Sec 6)
- Drilling systems.

The following systems typically belong to Category II, the exact category being dependent on the risk assessment for all operational scenarios:

- Liquid cargo transfer control system
- Bilge level detection and associated control of pumps
- Fuel oil treatment system
- Ballast transfer valve remote control system
- Stabilization and ride control systems
- Alarm and monitoring systems for propulsion systems

Note 1: The systems listed in [2.1.2] are not exhaustive.

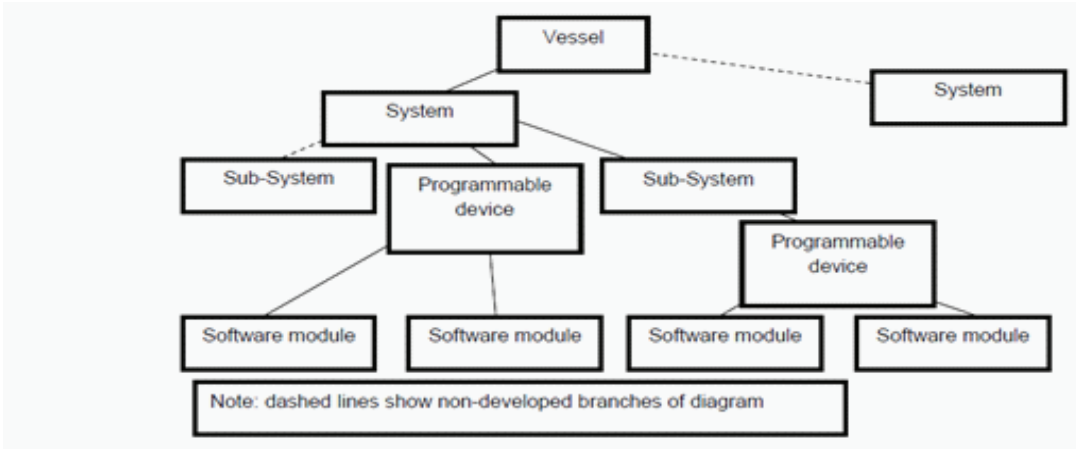
3 Requirements for software and supporting hardware

3.1 General

3.1.1 *(1/7/2017)*

The diagram in Fig 1 shows the hierarchy and relationships of a typical computer based system.

Figure 1 : Illustrative System Hierarchy *(1/7/2017)*



3.2 Life cycle approach

3.2.1 *(1/7/2017)*

A global top to bottom approach is to be undertaken regarding software and the integration in a system, spanning the software lifecycle. This approach is to be accomplished according to software development standards as listed herein or other standards recognized by the Society.

3.3 Quality system

3.3.1 *(1/7/2017)*

System integrators and suppliers are to follow a quality system, such as ISO 9001 associated with ISO 90003, for software development, testing and associated hardware to be demonstrated by either:

- the quality system being certified as compliant to the recognized standard by an Organisation with accreditation under a national accreditation scheme, or
- the Society confirming compliance to the standard through a specific assessment.

3.3.2 *(1/7/2017)*

The quality system is to include:

a) procedures regarding responsibilities, system documentation, configuration management and staff competency;

b) procedures regarding software and associated hardware lifecycle:

- organization set in place for acquisition of related hardware and software from suppliers,
- organization set in place for software code writing and verification,
- organization set in place for system validation before integration in the vessel.

3.3.3 *(1/7/2017)*

For the approval of the quality system at least the following minimum requirements are to be considered:

- specific procedure for the verification of software code of Category II and III at the level of systems, sub-systems and programmable devices and modules,
- a minimum set of check points for Category II and III systems (see [7] for the minimum check point)
- specific procedure for software modification and installation on board the vessel defining interactions with Owners.

Note 1: Examples of check points can be a required submittal of documentation, a test event, a technical design review meeting, or peer review meeting.

3.3.4 *(1/7/2017)*

A document, referred to herein as a Quality Plan, is to be produced that records how the quality management system will be applied for the specific computer based system and that includes, as a minimum, all the documentation required by [3.3.1], [3.3.2] and [3.3.3].

3.4 Risk Assessment

3.4.1 *(1/7/2017)*

A risk assessment is to be carried out in order to determine the risk associated with the system throughout its lifecycle, by identifying and evaluating the hazards associated with each function of the system.

The method of risk assessment shall be agreed with the Society.

Note 1: IEC/ISO31010 "Risk management - Risk assessment techniques" may be applied in order to determine method of risk assessment.

3.4.2 *(1/7/2017)*

A risk assessment report, including data coming from other suppliers, is to be submitted to the Society, upon request, by the system integrator or by the supplier.

3.4.3 *(1/7/2017)*

Based on the risk assessment, a revised system category (see [2]) might need to be agreed between Society and the system supplier.

3.4.4 *(1/7/2017)*

Where the risks associated with a computer based system are well understood, the risk assessment may be omitted; in such cases, the supplier or the system integrator is to provide a justification for the omission and demonstrate:

- how the risks are known,
- the equivalence of the context of use of the current computer based system and the computer based system initially used in order to determine the risks,
- the adequacy of existing control measures in the current context of use.

3.5 Code production and testing

3.5.1 *(1/7/2017)*

The following documentation is to be provided for Category II and III systems:

- Software modules functional description and associated hardware description for programmable devices: to be submitted by Supplier and System Integrator;
- Evidence of verification (detection and correction of software errors) for software modules, in accordance with the selected software development standard. Evidence requirements of the selected software standard might differ depending on how critical the correct operation of the software is to the function it performs: to be submitted by the Supplier and System Integrator.
- Evidence of functional tests for programmable devices at the software module, subsystem, and system level; the functional testing is to be designed to test the features of the software provided by the operating system, function libraries, customized layer of software and any set of parameters: to be submitted by the Suppliers thought the System Integrator.

3.6 Approval of programmable devices for Category II and III systems

3.6.1 *(1/7/2017)*

Approval of programmable devices integrated inside a system is to be delivered to the system integrator or supplier. Approval can be granted on a case by case basis, or as part of a product type approval, so long as documents listed in [7] have been reviewed/approved and the required tests have been witnessed by the Society (see [3.7] regarding hardware environmental type tests). Documentation is to address the compatibility of the programmable device in the ship's application, the necessity to have on board tests during ship integration and is to identify the components of system using the approved programmable devices.

3.7 Environmental conditions for hardware

3.7.1 *(1/7/2017)*

Evidence of environmental type testing according to Sec 6 regarding hardware elements included in the system and sub-systems are to be submitted to the Society for Category I, II and III computer based systems.

Note 1: This requirement is not mandatory for Category I computer based systems which are not subject to classification requirements.

3.8 System security

3.8.1 *(1/7/2017)*

Owner, system integrator and suppliers are to adopt security policies and include these in their quality systems and procedures.

3.8.2 *(1/7/2017)*

For Category I, II, and III systems, physical and logical security measures are to be in place to prevent unauthorized or unintentional modification of software, whether undertaken at the physical system or remotely.

3.8.3 *(1/7/2017)*

Prior to installation, all artefacts, software code, executables and the physical medium used for installation on the vessel are to be scanned for viruses and malicious software. Results of the scan are to be documented and kept with the Software Registry.

3.9 Integration testing before installation on board

3.9.1 *(1/7/2017)*

Intra-system integration testing is to be carried out between system and sub-system software modules before being integrated on board. The objective is to check that software functions are properly executed, that the software and the hardware it controls, interact and function properly together and that software systems react properly in case of failures.

Faults are to be simulated as realistically as possible to demonstrate appropriate system fault detection and system response. The results of any required failure analysis are to be observed.

Functional and failure testing can be demonstrated by simulation tests.

3.9.2 *(1/7/2017)*

For Category II and III systems the following documentation is to be submitted for examination:

a) Functional description of software

b) List and versions of software installed in system

c) User manual including instructions for use during software maintenance

d) List of interfaces between system and other ship systems

e) List of standards used for data links

f) Test programs and procedures for functional tests and failure tests: a FMEA may be requested by the Society in order to support containment of failure tests programs.

Additional documentation may be required by the Society.

The factory acceptance test, including functional and failure tests, is to be witnessed by Society.

3.10 Final integration and on board testing

3.10.1 *(1/7/2017)*

When it is found necessary to check safe interaction with other computerized systems and functions that could not be tested previously, simulation tests are to be carried out before installation.

3.10.2 *(1/7/2017)*

On board tests are to check that a computer based system in its final environment, integrated with all other systems with which it interacts, is:

- performing functions it was designed for;
- reacting safely in case of failures originated internally or by devices external to the system;
- interacting safely with other systems implemented on board vessel.

3.10.3 *(1/7/2017)*

Test specifications for final integration and on board testing of Category II and III systems, are to be submitted for approval; the tests are to be witnessed by the Society.

4 Requirements for data links for Category II and III systems

4.1 General requirements

4.1.1 *(1/7/2017)*

Loss of a data link is to be specifically addressed in risk assessment analysis.

4.1.2 *(1/7/2017)*

A single failure in data link hardware is to be automatically treated in order to restore proper working of system. For Category III systems a single failure in data link hardware is not to influence the proper working of the system.

4.1.3 *(1/7/2017)*

Characteristics of data link is to prevent overloading in any operational condition of system.

4.1.4 *(1/7/2017)*

Data link is to be self-checking, detecting failures on the link itself and data communication failures on nodes connected to the link. Detected failures are to initiate an alarm.

4.2 Specific requirements for wireless data links

4.2.1 *(1/7/2017)*

Category III systems is not to use wireless data links unless specifically considered by the Society on the basis of an engineering analysis carried out in accordance with an International or National Standard acceptable to the Society.

4.2.2 *(1/7/2017)*

Other categories of systems may use wireless data links with following requirements:

a) Recognised international wireless communication system protocols is to be employed, incorporating:
   - Message integrity: fault prevention, detection, diagnosis, and correction so that the received message is not corrupted or altered when compared to the transmitted message.
   - Configuration and device authentication: connection of devices that are included in the system design is only to be permitted.
   - Message encryption: protection of the confidentiality and or criticality of the data content.
   - Security management: protection of network assets, prevention of unauthorized access to network assets.

b) The internal wireless system within the vessel is to comply with the radio frequency and power level requirements of International Telecommunication Union and flag state requirements.

   Consideration is to be given to system operation in the event of port state and local regulations that pertain to the use of radio-frequency transmission prohibiting the operation of a wireless data communication link due to frequency and power level restrictions.

c) For wireless data communication equipment, tests during harbour and sea trials are to be conducted to demonstrate that radio-frequency transmission does not cause failure of any equipment and does not its self-fail as a result of electromagnetic interference during expected operating conditions.

5 Limited approval

5.1

5.1.1 *(1/7/2017)*

Sub-systems and programmable devices may be approved for limited applications with service restrictions when the ship system where they will be integrated is not known. In this case, requirements about quality systems under [3.3] might need to be fulfilled if required by the Society.

5.1.2 *(1/7/2017)*

Additional drawings, details, tests reports and surveys related to the standard declared by the Supplier may be required for examination.

Sub-systems and programmable devices may in this case be granted with a limited approval mentioning the required checks and tests performed.

6 Modifications during operation

6.1

6.1.1 *(1/7/2017)*

Organizations in charge of software modifications is to be clearly declared by Owner to the Society. A System integrator is to be designated by the Owner and is to fulfil requirements in [3].

Limited life cycle steps may be considered for modifications already considered and accepted in the scope of initial approval. The level of documentation needed to be provided for the modification is to be determined by the Society.

At the vessel level, it is the responsibility of Owner to manage traceability of these modifications; the achievement of

this responsibility is to be supported by system integrators updating the Software Registry.

This Software Registry is to contain:

- List and versions of software installed in systems required in [3.9];
- Results of security scans as described in [3.8].

6.1.2 *(1/7/2017)*

The Owner is to ensure that necessary procedures for software and hardware change management exist on board and that any software modification/upgrade are performed according to the procedure. All changes to computer based systems in the operational phase is to be recorded and be traceable.

7 Tests and Documentation

7.1

7.1.1 *(1/7/2017)*

Test and documentation are to be in accordance with Tab 2.

7.1.2 *(1/7/2017)*

The Society reserves the right to request the submission of additional documents if it is deemed necessary for the evaluation of the system, equipment or components.

Table 2 : Test and Documentation *(1/7/2017)*

Requirement	Supplier involved	System integrator involved	Owner involved	System Category		
				I **(1)**	II	III
Quality Plan	X	X		A **(2)**	A	A
Risk assessment report		X		I **(2)**	I **(2)**	I **(2)**
Software modules functional description and associated hardware description	X (if necessary)	X			I	I
Evidence of verification of software code	X (if necessary)	X			I	I
Evidence of functional tests for elements included in systems of Category II and III at the level of software module, sub-system and system	X	X		M	I	I
Test programs and procedures for functional tests and failure tests including a supporting FMEA or equivalent, at the request of the Class Society		X			A	A
Factory acceptance test event including functional and failure tests	X	X			W	W
Test program for simulation tests for final integration		X			A	A
Simulation tests for final integration		X			W	W
Test program for on board tests (includes wireless network testing)		X			A	A
On board integration tests (includes wireless network testing)		X			W	W
• List and versions of software installed in system • Functional description of software • User manual including instructions during software maintenance • List of interfaces between system and other ship systems		X			I	I
Updated Software Registry		X	X		I	I
Procedures and documentation related to Security Policy						
Test reports according to Sec 6	X	X		A **(3)**	A	A

Note 1:

A = Submitted for approval I = Provided (for information) W = Witness

(1) Additional documentation may be required upon request

(2) Upon request

(3) If in the scope of Class requirement

7.1.3

SECTION 4 CONSTRUCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS

1 General

1.1 Construction

1.1.1 Automation systems are to be so constructed as:

- to withstand the environmental conditions, as defined in Ch 2, Sec 2, [1], in which they operate
- to have necessary facilities for maintenance work.

1.2 Materials

1.2.1 Materials are generally to be of the flame-retardant type.

1.2.2 Connectors are to be able to withstand standard vibrations, mechanical constraints and corrosion conditions as given in Sec 6.

1.3 Component design

1.3.1 Automation components are to be designed to simplify maintenance operations. They are to be so constructed as to have:

- easy identification of failures
- easy access to replaceable parts
- easy installation and safe handling in the event of replacement of parts (plug and play principle) without impairing the operational capability of the system, as far as practicable
- facility for adjustment of set points or calibration
- test point facilities, to verify the proper operation of components.

1.4 Environmental and supply conditions

1.4.1 The environmental and supply conditions are specified in Sec 1. Specific environmental conditions are to be considered for air temperature and humidity, vibrations, corrosion from chemicals and mechanical or biological attacks.

2 Electrical and/or electronic systems

2.1 General

2.1.1 Electrical and electronic equipment is to comply with the requirements of Chapter 2 and Chapter 3.

2.1.2 A separation is to be done between any electrical components and liquids, if they are in a same enclosure. Necessary drainage will be provided where liquids are likely to leak.

2.1.3 When plug-in connectors or plug-in elements are used, their contacts are not to be exposed to excessive mechanical loads. They are to be provided with a locking device.

2.1.4 All replaceable parts are to be so arranged that it is not possible to connect them incorrectly or to use incorrect replacements. Where this not practicable, the replacement parts as well as the associated connecting devices are to be clearly identified. In particular, all connection terminals are to be properly tagged. When replacement cannot be carried out with the system on, a warning sign is to be provided.

2.1.5 Forced cooling systems are to be avoided. Where forced cooling is installed, an alarm is to be provided in the event of failure of the cooling system.

2.1.6 The interface connection is to be so designed to receive the cables required. The cables are to be chosen according to Ch 2, Sec 3.

2.2 Electronic system

2.2.1 Printed circuit boards are to be so designed that they are properly protected against the normal aggression expected in their environment.

2.2.2 Electronic systems are to be constructed taking account of electromagnetic interferences.

Special precautions are to be taken for:

- measuring elements such as the analogue amplifier or analog/digital converter; and
- connecting different systems having different ground references.

2.2.3 The components of electronic systems (printed circuit board, electronic components) are to be clearly identifiable with reference to the relevant documentation.

2.2.4 Where adjustable set points are available, they are to be readily identifiable and suitable means are to be provided to protect them against changes due to vibrations and uncontrolled access.

2.2.5 The choice of electronic components is to be made according to the normal environmental conditions, in particular the temperature rating.

2.2.6 All stages of fabrication of printed circuit boards are to be subjected to quality control. Evidence of this control is to be documented.

2.2.7 Burn-in tests or equivalent tests are to be performed.

2.2.8 The programmable components are to be clearly tagged with the program date and reference.

Components are to be protected against outside alteration when loaded.

2.3 Electrical system

2.3.1 Cables and insulated conductors used for internal wiring are to be at least of the flame-retardant type, and are to comply with the requirements in Chapter 2.

2.3.2 If specific products (e.g. oil) are likely to come into contact with wire insulation, the latter is to be resistant to such products or properly shielded from them, and to comply with the requirements in Chapter 2.

3 Pneumatic systems

3.1

3.1.1 Pneumatic automation systems are to comply with Ch 1, Sec 10, [14].

3.1.2 Pneumatic circuits of automation systems are to be independent of any other pneumatic circuit on board.

4 Hydraulic systems

4.1

4.1.1 Hydraulic automation systems are to comply with Ch 1, Sec 10, [14].

4.1.2 Suitable filtering devices are to be incorporated into the hydraulic circuits.

4.1.3 Hydraulic circuits of automation systems are to be independent of any other hydraulic circuit on board.

5 Automation consoles

5.1 General

5.1.1 Automation consoles are to be designed on ergonomic principles. Handrails are to be fitted for safe operation of the console.

5.2 Indicating instruments

5.2.1 The operator is to receive feed back information on the effects of his orders.

5.2.2 Indicating instruments and controls are to be arranged according to the logic of the system in control. In addition, the operating movement and the resulting movement of the indicating instrument are to be consistent with each other.

5.2.3 The instruments are to be clearly labelled. When installed in the wheelhouse, all lighted instruments of consoles are to be dimmable, where necessary.

5.3 VDU's and keyboards

5.3.1 VDU's in consoles are to be located so as to be easily readable from the normal position of the operator. The environmental lighting is not to create any reflection which makes reading difficult.

5.3.2 The keyboard is to be located to give easy access from the normal position of the operator. Special precautions are to be taken to avoid inadvertent operation of the keyboard.

SECTION 5 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

1 General

1.1

1.1.1 Automation systems are to be installed taking into account:

- the maintenance requirements (test and replacement of systems or components)
- the influence of EMI. The IEC 60533 standard is to be taken as guidance
- the environmental conditions corresponding to the location in accordance with Ch 2, Sec 1 and Ch 2, Sec 3, [6].

1.1.2 Control stations are to be arranged for the convenience of the operator.

1.1.3 Automation components are to be properly fitted. Screws and nuts are to be locked, where necessary.

2 Sensors and components

2.1 General

2.1.1 The location and selection of the sensor is to be done so as to measure the actual value of the parameter. Temperature, vibration and EMI levels are to be taken into account. When this is not possible, the sensor is to be designed to withstand the local environment.

2.1.2 The enclosure of the sensor and the cable entry are to be appropriate to the space in which they are located.

2.1.3 Means are to be provided for testing, calibration and replacement of automation components. Such means are to be designed, as far as practicable, so as to avoid perturbation of the normal operation of the system.

2.1.4 A tag number is to identify automation components and is to be clearly marked and attached to the component. These tag numbers are to be collected on the instrument list mentioned in Sec 1, Tab 1.

2.1.5 Electrical connections are to be arranged for easy replacement and testing of sensors and components. They are to be clearly marked.

2.1.6 Low level signal sensors are to be avoided. When installed they are to be located as close as possible to amplifiers, so as to avoid external influences. Failing this, the wiring is to be provided with suitable EMI protection and temperature correction.

2.2 Temperature elements

2.2.1 Temperature sensors, thermostats or thermometers are to be installed in a thermowell of suitable material, to permit easy replacement and functional testing. The thermowell is not to significantly modify the response time of the whole element.

2.3 Pressure elements

2.3.1 Three-way valves or other suitable arrangements are to be installed to permit functional testing of pressure elements, such as pressure sensors, pressure switches or pressure gauges, without stopping the installation.

2.3.2 In specific applications, where high pulsations of pressure are likely to occur, a damping element, such as a capillary tube or equivalent, is to be installed.

2.4 Level switches

2.4.1 Level switches fitted to flammable oil tanks, or similar installations, are to be installed so as to reduce the risk of fire.

3 Cables

3.1 Installation

3.1.1 Cables are to be installed according to the requirements in Ch 2, Sec 12, [7].

3.1.2 Suitable installation features such as screening and/or twisted pairs and/or separation between signal and other cables are to be provided in order to avoid possible interference on control and instrumentation cables.

3.1.3 Specific transmission cables (coaxial cables, twisted pairs, etc.) are to be routed in specific cable-ways and mechanically protected to avoid loss of any important transmitted data. Where there is a high risk of mechanical damage, the cables are to be protected with pipes or equivalent.

3.1.4 The cable bend radius is to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 2, Sec 12, [7.2].

For mineral insulated cables, coaxial cables or fibre optic cables, whose characteristics may be modified, special precautions are to be taken according to the manufacturer's instructions.

3.2 Cable terminations

3.2.1 Cable terminations are to be arranged according to the requirements in Chapter 2. Particular attention is to be paid to the connections of cable shields. Shields are to be connected only at the sensor end when the sensor is

earthed, and only at the processor end when the sensor is floating.

3.2.2 Cable terminations are to be able to withstand the identified environmental conditions (shocks, vibrations, salt mist, humidity, etc.).

3.2.3 Terminations of all special cables such as mineral insulated cables, coaxial cables or fibre optic cables are to be arranged according to the manufacturer's instructions.

4 Pipes

4.1

4.1.1 For installation of piping circuits used for automation purposes, see the requirements in Ch 1, Sec 10.

4.1.2 As far as practicable, piping containing liquids is not to be installed in or adjacent to electrical enclosures (see Sec 4, [2.1.2]).

4.1.3 Hydraulic and pneumatic piping for automation systems is to be marked to indicate its function.

5 Automation consoles

5.1 General

5.1.1 Consoles or control panels are to be located so as to enable a good view of the process under control, as far as practicable. Instruments are to be clearly readable in the ambient lighting.

5.1.2 The location is to be such as to allow easy access for maintenance operations.

SECTION 6 TESTING

1 General

1.1 Commissioning

1.1.1 Automation systems are to be tested for type approval, acceptance or commissioning, when required. Tests are to be carried out under the supervision of a Surveyor of the Society.

1.1.2 The type testing conditions for electrical, control and instrumentation equipment, computers and peripherals are described in [2].

1.1.3 Automation systems are to be inspected at works, according to the requirements of [3], in order to check that the construction complies with the Rules.

1.1.4 Automation systems are to be commissioned when installed on board and prior to sea trials, to verify their performance and adaptation on site, according to [4].

2 Type approval

2.1 General

2.1.1 *(1/1/2016)*

This test specification for type approval is applicable, but not confined, to electrical, electronic and programmable equipment intended for (see Note 1a)):

- control, monitoring, alarm and protection systems for use in ships
- internal communication.

Note 1:

a) These test requirements are harmonised with IEC 60092-504 “Electrical Installations in Ships -Part 504: Special features - Control and Instrumentation” and IEC 60533 “Electrical and electronic installations in ships - Electromagnetic compatibility”. Electrical and electronic equipment on board ships, required neither by the Rules nor by International Conventions, liable to cause electromagnetic disturbance are to be of type which fulfill the test requirements of test specification items 19 and 20 of Tab 1.

b) Functional test, as used in Tab 1, is a simplified test sufficient to verify that the equipment under test (EUT) has not suffered any deterioration caused by the individual environmental tests and not a complete performance test as required in item 2 of Tab 1.

2.1.2 The necessary documents to be submitted, prior to type testing, are listed in Sec 1, [2.4.1]. The type approval of automation systems refers to hardware type approval or software type approval, as applicable.

2.2 Hardware type approval

2.2.1

These tests are to demonstrate the ability of the equipment to function as intended under the specified testing conditions.

The extent of the testing, i.e. the selection and sequence of tests and the number of pieces to be tested is to be determined upon examination and evaluation of the equipment or component subject to testing giving due regard to its intended use.

Equipment is to be tested in its normal position unless otherwise specified in the test specification.

The relevant tests are listed in Tab 1.

2.2.2 The following additional tests may be required, depending on particular manufacturing or operational conditions:

- mechanical endurance test
- temperature shock test (e.g. 12 shocks on exhaust gas temperature sensors from 20°C ± 5°C to maximum temperature of the range)
- immersion test
- oil resistance test
- shock test.

The test procedure is to be defined with the Society in each case.

Table 1 : Type tests *(1/1/2020)*

No.	Test	Procedure **(1)**	Test parameters	Other information
1	Visual inspection			• conformance to drawings, design data.
2	Performance test	Manufacturer performance test programme based upon specification and relevant Rule requirements. When the EUT is required to comply with an international performance standard, e.g. protection relays, verification of requirements in the standard are to be part of the performance testing required in this initial test and subsequent performance tests after environmental testing where required in this Tab 1.	• standard atmosphere condition • temperature: 25°C ± 10°C • relative humidity: 60% ± 30% • air pressure: 96 KPa ±10 KPa	• confirmation that operation is in accordance with the requirements specified for particular system or equipment • checking of self-monitoring features • checking of specified protection against an access to the memory • checking against effect an erroneous use of control elements in the case of computer systems
3	External power supply failure		• 3 interruptions during 5 minutes • switching- off time 30 s each case	• The time of 5 minutes may be exceeded if the equipment under test needs a longer time for start up, e.g. booting sequence • For equipment which requires booting, one additional power supply interruption during booting to be performed Verification of: • equipment behaviour upon loss and restoration of supply; • possible corruption of programme or data held in programmable electronic systems, where applicable.

<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Test</th><th>Procedure (1)</th><th>Test parameters</th><th>Other information</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">4</td><td colspan="2">Power supply variations
a) Electric</td><td>AC SUPPLY
<table><tr><th>Combination</th><th>Voltage variation permanent</th><th>Frequency variation permanent</th></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>+ 6%</td><td>+ 5%</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>+ 6%</td><td>– 5%</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>– 10%</td><td>– 5%</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>– 10%</td><td>+ 5%</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>voltage transient
1,5 s
%</td><td>frequency transient
5 s
%</td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>+ 20%</td><td>+ 10%</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>– 20%</td><td>– 10%</td></tr></table>DC SUPPLY
Voltage tolerance continuous: ± 10%
Voltage cyclic variation: 5%
Voltage ripple: 10%

Electric battery supply:
• +30% to –25% for equipment connected to charging battery or as determined by the charging/discharging characteristics, including ripple voltage from the charging device;
• +20% to –25% for equipment not connected to the battery during charging</td><td rowspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">b) Pneumatic and hydraulic</td><td>Pressure: ± 20%
Duration: 15 minutes</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">5</td><td rowspan="2">Dry heat
(see (2))</td><td>IEC 60068-2-2
Test Bb for non-heat dissipating equipment</td><td>• Temperature: 55°C ± 2°C
Duration: 16 hours, or
• Temperature: 70°C ± 2°C
Duration: 16 hours</td><td>• equipment operating during conditioning and testing
• functional test (see [2.1.1] Note 1b)) during the last hour at the test temperature
• for equipment specified for increased temperature the dry heat test is to be conducted at the agreed test temperature and duration.</td></tr>
<tr><td>IEC 60068-2-2
Test Be for heat dissipating equipment</td><td>• Temperature: 55°C ± 2°C
Duration: 16 hours, or
• Temperature: 70°C ± 2°C
Duration: 16 hours</td><td>• equipment operating during conditioning and testing with cooling system on if provided
• functional test (see [2.1.1] Note 1b)) during the last hour at the test temperature
• for equipment specified for increased temperature the dry heat test is to be conducted at the agreed test temperature and duration</td></tr>
</table>

No.	Test	Procedure **(1)**	Test parameters	Other information
6	Damp heat	IEC 60068-2-30 Test D_b	Temperature: 55°C Humidity: 95% Duration: 2 cycles 2 x (12 + 12 hours)	• measurement of insulation resistance before test • the test is to start with 25°C ± 3°C and at least 95% humidity • equipment operating during the complete first cycle and switched off during second cycle except for functional test • functional test during the first 2 hours of the first cycle at the test temperature and during the last 2 hours of the second cycle at the test temperature; duration of the second cycle can be extended due to more convenient management of the functional test • recovery at standard atmosphere conditions • insulation resistance measurements and performance test
7	Vibration	IEC 60068-2-6 Test F_c	• 2 Hz ± 3/0 Hz to 13,2 Hz – amplitude: ± 1mm • 13,2 Hz to 100 Hz – acceleration: ± 0,7 g For severe vibration conditions such as, e. g., on diesel engines, air compressors, etc.: • 2,0 Hz to 25 Hz – amplitude: ± 1,6 mm • 25 Hz to 100 Hz – acceleration: ± 4,0 g Note: More severe conditions may exist for example on exhaust manifolds or fuel oil injection systems of diesel engines. For equipment specified for increased vibration levels the vibration test is to be conducted at the agreed vibration level, frequency range and duration. Values may be required to be in these cases 40 Hz to 2000 Hz - acceleration: ± 10,0 g at 600°C,duration 90 min.	• duration in case of no resonance condition 90 minutes at 30 Hz; • duration at each resonance frequency at which $Q \geq 2$ is recorded - 90 minutes; • during the vibration test, functional tests are to be carried out; • tests to be carried out in three mutually perpendicular planes; • it is recommended as a guidance that Q does not exceed 5. • where sweep test is to be carried out instead of the discrete frequency test and a number of resonant frequencies are detected close to each other, duration of the test is to be 120 min. Sweep over a restricted frequency range between 0,8 and 1,2 times the critical frequencies can be used where appropriate. Note: Critical frequency is a frequency at which the equipment being tested may exhibit: • malfunction and/or performance deterioration • mechanical resonances and/or other response effects occur, e.g. chatter

No.	Test	Procedure **(1)**	Test parameters	Other information
8	Inclination	IEC 60092-504	Static 22,5°	a) inclined to the vertical at an angle of at least 22,5° b) inclined to at least 22,5° on the other side of the vertical and in the same plane as in (a) c) inclined to the vertical at an angle of at least 22,5° in plane at right angles to that used in (a) d) inclined to at least 22,5° on the other side of the vertical and in the same plane as in (c). Note: The period of testing in each position should be sufficient to fully evaluate the behaviour of the equipment.
			Dynamic 22,5°	Using the directions defined in a) to d) above, the equipment is to be rolled to an angle of 22,5° each side of the vertical with a period of 10 seconds. The test in each direction is to be carried out for not less than 15 minutes. On ships for the carriage of liquified gases and chemicals, the emergency power supply is to remain operational with the ship flooded up to a maximum final athwart ship inclination of 30°. Note: These inclination tests are normally not required for equipment with no moving parts
9	Insulation resistance	Rated supply voltage voltage U_n(V) (V) $U_n \leq 65$ $U_n > 65$ Test voltage D.C. 2 x U_n min. 24 500	Minimum insulation resistance before test: 10 MΩ, 100 MΩ after test: 1,0 MΩ, 10 MΩ	For high voltage equipment, reference is made to Ch 2, Sec 13. • insulation resistance test is to be carried out before and after: damp heat test, cold test and salt mist test, high voltage test; • between all circuits and earth; and where appropriate • between the phases. Note: Certain components e.g. for EMC protection may be required to be disconnected for this test.

No.	Test	Procedure **(1)**	Test parameters	Other information
10	High voltage	Rated voltage U_n (V) Up to 65 66 to 250 251 to 500 501 to 690	Test voltage (V) (A.C. voltage 50 or 60Hz) 2 x U_n + 500 1500 2000 2500	For high voltage equipment, reference is made to Ch 2, Sec 13. • separate circuits are to be tested against each other and all circuits connected with each other tested against earth; • printed circuits with electronic components may be removed during the test; • period of application of the test voltage: 1 minute
11	Cold	IEC 60068-2-1	• Temperature: +5°C ± 3°C Duration: 2 hours, or • Temperature: –25°C ± 3°C Duration: 2 hours (see **(3)**)	• initial measurement of insulation resistance; • equipment not operating during conditioning and testing except for operational test; • operational test during the last hour at the test temperature; • insulation resistance measurement and the operational test after recovery
12	Salt mist	IEC 60068-2-52 Test Kb	Four spraying periods with a storage of seven days after each.	• initial measurement of insulation resistance and initial functional test • equipment not operating during conditioning • functional test on the 7th day of each storage period • insulation resistance measurement and performance test 4 to 6h after recovery (see **(4)**) • on completion of exposure, the equipment shall be examined to verify that deterioration or corrosion (if any) is superficial in nature
13	Electrostatic discharge	IEC 61000-4-2	Contact discharge: 6 kV Air discharge: 2kV, 4kV, 8 kV Interval between single discharges: 1 s. No. of pulses: 10 per polarity According to test level 3	• to simulate electrostatic discharge as may occur when persons touch the appliance • the test is to be confined to the points and surfaces that can normally be reached by the operator • performance Criterion B (see **(5)**)

No.	Test	Procedure **(1)**	Test parameters	Other information
14	Electro-magnetic field	IEC 61000-4-3	Frequency range: 80 MHz 6 GHz Modulation**: 80% AM at 1000Hz Field strength: 10V/m Frequency sweep rate: $\leq 1{,}5.10^{-3}$ decades/s (or 1% / 3 s) According to test level 3	• to simulate electromagnetic fields radiated by different transmitters • the test is to be confined to the appliances exposed to direct radiation by transmitters at their place of installation • performance criterion A (see **(6)**). ** If, for tests of equipment, an input signal with a modulation frequency of 1000 Hz is necessary, a modulation frequency of 400 Hz may be chosen • If an equipment is intended to receive radio signals for the purpose of radio communication (e.g. wi-fi router, remote radio controller), then the immunity limits at its communication frequency do not apply, subject to the provisions in Sec 3, [4.2].
15	Conducted low frequency		A.C.: • Frequency range: rated frequency to 200th harmonic • Test voltage (rms): 10% of supply to 15th harmonic reducing to 1% at 100th harmonic and maintain this level to the 200th harmonic, min 3 V rms Max 2 W D.C.: • Frequency range: 50 Hz - 10 kHz • Test voltage (rms) :10% of supply max. 2 W	• to simulate distortions in the power supply system generated for instance, by electronic consumers and coupled in as harmonics • performance criterion A (see **(6)**) • See Figure in Notes in this Table • to keep max. 2W, the voltage of the test signal may be lower.
16	Conducted Radio Frequency	IEC 61000-4-6	AC, DC, I/O ports and signal/control lines: Frequency range: 150 kHz - 80 MHz Amplitude: 3 V rms (see **(7)**) Modulation***: 80% AM at 1000 Hz Frequency sweep range: $\leq 1{,}5.10^{-3}$ decades/s (or 1% / 3sec.) According to test level 2	• Equipment design and the choice of materials is to simulate electromagnetic fields coupled as high frequency into the test specimen via the connecting lines • performance criterion A (see **(6)**). *** If, for tests of equipment, an input signal with a modulation frequency of 1000 Hz is necessary, a modulation frequency of 400 Hz may be chosen
17	Electrical Fast Transients / Burst	IEC 61000-4-4	Single pulse time: 5ns (between 10% and 90% value) Single pulse width: 50 ns (50% value) Amplitude (peak): 2 kV line on power supply port/earth; 1 kV on I/O data control and communication ports (coupling clamp) Pulse period: 300 ms Burst duration: 15 ms Duration/polarity: 5 min According to test level 3	• arcs generated when actuating electrical contacts • interface effect occurring on the power supply, as well as at the external wiring of the test specimen • performance criterion B (see **(5)**)

No.	Test	Procedure **(1)**	Test parameters	Other information
18	Surge	IEC 61000-4-5	Test applicable to AC and DC power ports Open-circuit voltage: Pulse rise time: 1,2 µs ((front time) Pulse width: 50 µs (time to half value) Amplitude (peak) : 1 kV line/earth; 0,5 kV line/line Short-circuit current: Pulse rise time: 8 µs (front time) Pulse width: 20 µs (time to half value) Repetition rate: ≥ 1 pulse/min No of pulses: 5 per polarity Application: continuous According to test level 2	• interference generated for instance, by switching "ON" or "OFF" high power inductive consumers • test procedure in accordance with figure 10 of the standard for equipment where power and signal lines are identical • performance criterion B (see **(5)**)
19	Radiated Emission	CISPR 16-2-3 IEC 60945 for 156-165 MHz	Limits below 1000 MHz For equipment installed in the bridge and deck zone: Frequency range: — Quasi peak limits: 0,15 - 0,30 MHz — 80 - 52 dBµV/m 0,30 - 30 MHz — 52 - 34 dBµV/m 30 - 1000 MHz — 54 dBµV/m except for: 156 - 165 MHz — 24 dBµV/m For equipment installed in the general power distribution zone: Frequency range: — Quasi peak limits: 0,15 - 30 MHz — 80 - 50 dBµV/m 30 - 100 MHz — 60 - 54 dBµV/m 100 - 1000 MHz — 54 dBµV/m except for: 156 - 165 MHz — 24 dBµV/m Limits above 1000 MHz Frequency range: Average limit: 1000 - 6000 MHz 54 dBµV/m	• procedure in accordance with the standard but distance 3 m between equipment and antenna • for the frequency band 156 MHz to 165 MHz the measurement is to be repeated with a receiver bandwidth of 9 kHz (as per IEC 60945) • alternatively the radiation limit at a distance of 3 m from the enclosure port over the frequency 156 MHz to 165 MHz is to be 30 dB micro-V/m peak (as per IEC 60945). • procedure in accordance with the standard (distance 3 m between equipment and antenna) • equipment intended to transmit radio signals for the purpose of radio communication (e.g. wi-fi router, remote radio controller) may be exempted from limit, within its communication frequency range, subject to the provisions in Sec 3, [4.2].
20	Conducted Emission	CISPR 16-2-1	Test applicable to AC and DC power ports For equipment installed in the bridge and deck zone: Frequency range: — Limits: 10 - 150 kHz — 96 - 50 dBµV 150 - 350 kHz — 60 - 50 dBµV 0,35 - 30 MHz — 50 dBµV For equipment installed in the general power distribution zone: Frequency range: — Limits: 10 - 150 kHz — 120 - 69 dBµV 150 - 500 kHz — 79 dBµV 0,5 - 30 MHz — 73 dBµV	

No.	Test	Procedure **(1)**	Test parameters	Other information
21	Flame retardant	IEC 60092-101 or IEC 60695-11-5	Flame application: 5 times 15 s each Interval between each application: 15 s or one time 30 s. Test criteria based upon application. The test is performed with the EUT or housing of the EUT applying needle-flame test method.	• the burnt out or damaged part of the specimen by not more than 60mm long • no flame, no incandescence or in the event of a flame or incandescence being present, it is to extinguish itself within 30 s of the removal of the needle flame without full combustion of the test specimen • any dripping material is to extinguish itself in such a way as not to ignite a wrapping tissue. The drip height is 200 mm ± 5 mm.

(1) Column 3 indicates the testing procedure which is normally to be applied. However, equivalent testing procedure may be accepted by the Society provided that what required in the other columns is fulfilled. The latest edition of the normative reference applies.

(2) Dry heat at 70 °C is to be carried out to automation, control and instrumentation equipment subject to high degree of heat, for example mounted in consoles, housings, etc. together with other heat dissipating power equipment.

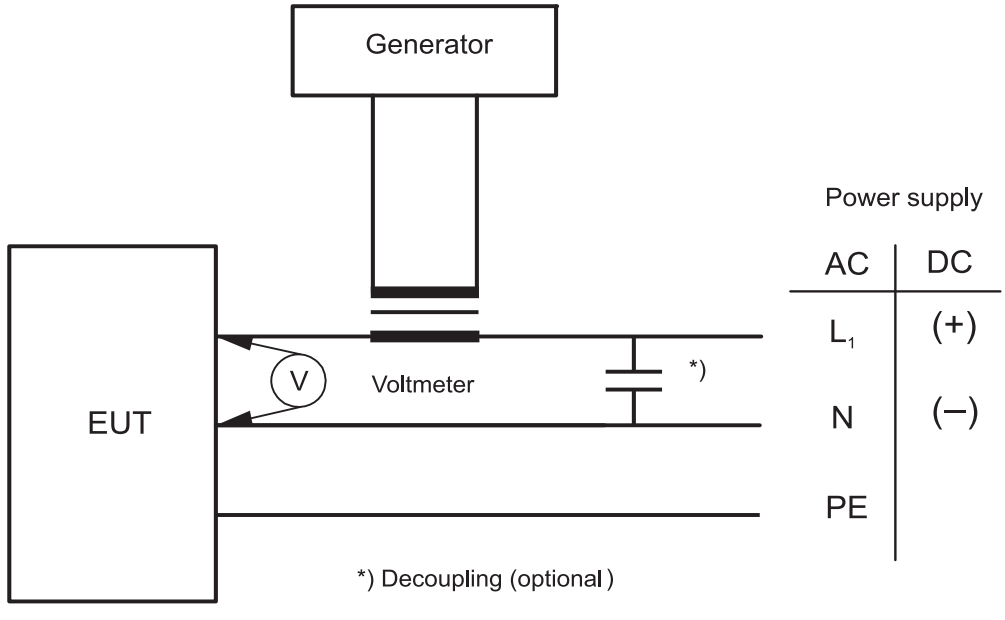
(3) For equipment installed in non-weather protected locations or cold locations test is to be carried out at –25°C.

(4) Salt mist test is to be carried out for equipment installed in weather exposed areas.

(5) Performance Criterion B: (for transient phenomena): the EUT is to continue to operate as intended after the tests. No degradation of performance or loss of function is allowed as defined in the technical specification published by the Manufacturer. During the test, degradation or loss of function or performance which is self recoverable is however allowed but no change of actual operating state or stored data is allowed.

(6) Performance Criterion A (for continuous phenomena): the Equipment Under Test is to continue to operate as intended during and after the test. No degradation of performance or loss is allowed as defined in relevant equipment standard and the technical specification published by the Manufacturer.

(7) For equipment installed on the bridge and deck zone, the test levels are to be increased to 10V rms for spot frequencies in accordance with IEC 60945 at 2; 3; 4; 6.2; 8.2; 12.6; 16.5; 18.8; 22; 25 MHz.



2.3 Software type approval

2.3.1 Software type approval consists of evaluation of the development quality and verification of test results.

Documents in accordance with Sec 1, Tab 2 are required to demonstrate the development quality.

Repetition of unit tests, integration tests or validation tests is required to verify the consistency of test results.

Certificate may be issued at the request of the manufacturer when approval is granted.

2.3.2 For programmable electronic systems, as a guidance, the documents to be submitted for information are listed in Tab 2.

2.3.3 The software type approval applies only to basic software of the programmable electronic system.

The basic software approval is carried out in the following phases:

- Examination of the documents as required in Sec 1, [2.3.2],
- Verification that all the development work has been carried out according to the quality procedure. The complementary documents required in Tab 2 prove the quality of the development work.

Note 1: Particular attention will be given to the test results collected on unit testing file, integration test file and validation test file

- Repetition of tests of the essential function of the software. Comparison with documentation containing the test results of previous tests is to be carried out.

2.3.4 The application software is to be approved on a case by case basis, according to [3.3.2].

2.4 Navigational and radio equipment

2.4.1

The test conditions as specified in IEC 60945 (marine navigational and radiocommunication equipment and systems - general requirements, methods of testing and required test results) are to be applied for the above-mentioned equipment.

2.5 Loading instruments

2.5.1 *(1/1/2017)*

Loading instrument approval consists of:

- approval of hardware according to [2.2], unless two computers are available on board for loading calculations only
- for programmable loading instruments, approval of basic software according to [2.3]
- approval of application software, consisting in data verification which results in the Endorsed Test Condition according to Part B
- installation testing according to [4].

Table 2 : Basic software development documents

No.	I/A **(2)**	DOCUMENT
1	I	Follow-up of developed software: identification, safeguard, storage
2	I	Document showing the capability and training of the development team
3	I	Production of a specification file
4	I	Production of a preliminary design file
5	I	Production of a detailed design file
6	I	Production of a coding file
7	I	Production of a unit testing file **(1)**
8	I	Production of an integration test file **(1)**
9	I	Production of a validation test file **(1)**
10	I	Production of a maintenance facility file
11	I	Production of a quality plan
12	I	Follow-up of the quality plan: checks, audits, inspections, reviews

(1) Complementary test carried out, at random, at the request of the Surveyor

(2) A : to be submitted for approval;
I : to be submitted for information.

3 Acceptance testing

3.1 General

3.1.1 Acceptance tests are generally to be carried out at the manufacturer's facilities before the shipment of the equipment.

Acceptance tests refer to hardware and software tests as applicable.

3.2 Hardware testing

3.2.1 Hardware acceptance tests include, where applicable:

- visual inspection
- operational tests and, in particular:
  - tests of all alarm and safety functions
  - verification of the required performance (range, calibration, repeatability, etc.) for analogue sensors
  - verification of the required performance (range, set points, etc.) for on/off sensors
  - verification of the required performance (range, response time, etc.) for actuators
  - verification of the required performance (full scale, etc.) for indicating instruments
- high voltage test
- hydrostatic tests.

Additional tests may be required by the Society.

3.2.2 Final acceptance will be granted subject to:

- the results of the tests listed in [3.2.1]
- the type test report or type approval certificate.

3.3 Software testing

3.3.1 Software acceptance tests of programmable electronic systems are to be carried out to verify their adaptation to their use on board, and concern mainly the application software.

3.3.2 The software modules of the application software are to be tested individually and subsequently subjected to an integration test. The test results are to be documented and to be part of the final file. It is to be checked that:

- the development work has been carried out in accordance with the plan
- the documentation includes the proposed tests, the acceptance criteria and the result.

Repetition tests may be required to verify the consistency of test results.

3.3.3 Software acceptance will be granted subject to:

- examination of the available documentation
- a functional test of the whole system.

The Society may ask for additional tests of systems which are part of safety systems or which integrate several functions.

4 Commissioning

4.1 General

4.1.1 Commissioning tests are to be carried out on automation systems associated with essential services to verify their compliance with the Rules, by means of visual inspection and the performance and functionality according to Tab 3.

When completed, automation systems are to be such that a single failure, for example loss of power supply, is not to result in a major degradation of the propulsion or steering of the ship. In addition, a blackout test is to be carried out to show that automation systems are continuously supplied.

Upon completion of commissioning tests, test reports are to be made available to the Surveyor.

Table 3 : Commissioning tests

Equipment	Nature of tests
Electronic equipment	Main hardware functionality
Analogue sensors	Signal calibration, trip set point adjustment
On/off sensors	Simulation of parameter to verify and record the set points
Actuators	Checking of operation in whole range and performance (response time, pumping)
Reading instruments	Checking of calibration, full scale and standard reference value

Part C
Machinery, Systems and Fire Protection

Chapter 4
FIRE PROTECTION, DETECTION AND EXTINCTION

SECTION 1 REQUIREMENTS FOR FIRE PROTECTION, DETECTION AND EXTINCTION

SECTION 1 REQUIREMENTS FOR FIRE PROTECTION, DETECTION AND EXTINCTION

1 General

1.1 Purpose and application

1.1.1

This Section applies to cargo ships and passenger ships for which classification is requested.

Note 1: As from 1 January 2007, the statutory requirements of the SOLAS Convention and/or national safety regulations, as applicable, regarding fire protection, detection and extinction (hereinafter referred to as "fire protection statutory requirements") are no longer mandatory for the purpose of classification except where the Society carries out surveys relevant to fire protection statutory requirements on behalf of the flag Administration. In such cases, fire protection statutory requirements are considered a matter of class and therefore compliance with these requirements is also verified by the Society for classification purposes.
In general, only IACS Unified Requirements in force related to fire protection, detection and extinction have been retained as Rule requirements within the scope of classification and are contained in this Chapter 4.

1.1.2

[2]; [3]; [4]; [5.1]; [5.3]; [6]; [7]; [8] apply to all ships.

1.1.3

[5.2]; [8]; [9] apply to cargo ships only.

1.1.4

Requirements for tankers in this Section apply to tankers carrying oil having a flashpoint not exceeding 60°C (closed cup test).

1.1.5

Unless otherwise stated, for materials and design criteria of piping and relevant accessories reference is to be made to Ch 1, Sec 10.

2 Documentation to be submitted

2.1

2.1.1

The Interested Party is to submit to the Society the documents listed in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	I/A **(1)**	Document **(2)**
1	A	Ventilation systems in cargo area of tankers, excluding cargo tanks
2	A	Automatic fire detection systems in unattended machinery spaces
3	A	Arrangement of local application fixed fire-extinguishing systems **(2)** and inert gas systems
4	A	Gas detection systems on tankers
5	A	Fixed fire-extinguishing system in scavenge spaces of two-stroke crosshead type engines, according to the requirements of Ch 1, Sec 2, [4.4.1]
6	A	Electrical diagram of local application fixed gas fire-extinguishing systems
7	I	General arrangement plan

(1) A : to be submitted for approval, in four copies I : to be submitted for information, in duplicate.

(2) Plans are to be schematic and functional and to contain all information necessary for their correct interpretation and verification such as:

- service pressures
- capacity and head of pumps and compressors, if any
- materials and dimensions of piping and associated fittings
- volumes of protected spaces
- surface areas of protected zones for pressure water-spraying systems
- type, number and location of nozzles of extinguishing media for gas and pressure water-spraying systems.

All or part of the information may be provided, instead of on the above plans, in suitable operation manuals or in specifications of the systems.

3 Definitions

3.1 Accommodation spaces

3.1.1

Accommodation spaces are those spaces used for public spaces, corridors, stairs, lavatories, cabins, offices, hospitals, cinemas, games and hobby rooms, barber shops, pantries containing no cooking appliances and similar spaces.

3.2 Cargo area

3.2.1

The cargo area is that part of the ship that contains cargo holds, cargo tanks, slop tanks and cargo pump rooms including pump rooms, cofferdams, ballast and void spaces adjacent to cargo tanks and also deck areas throughout the entire length and breadth of the part of the ship over the above-mentioned spaces.

3.2.2

For the definition of the cargo area of chemical tankers (see [3.11]) and gas carriers (see [3.25]), refer to Part E, Chapter 8 and Part E, Chapter 9, respectively.

3.3 Cargo ship

3.3.1

Cargo ship is any ship which is not a passenger ship.

3.4 Cargo spaces

3.4.1

Cargo spaces are spaces used for cargo, cargo oil tanks, tanks for other liquid cargo and trunks to such spaces.

3.5 Chemical tanker

3.5.1

Chemical tanker is a tanker constructed or adapted and used for the carriage in bulk of any liquid product of a flammable nature listed in Pt E, Ch 8, Sec 17.

3.6 Closed ro-ro spaces

3.6.1

Closed ro-ro spaces are those ro-ro spaces which are neither open ro-ro spaces nor weather decks.

3.7 Closed vehicle spaces

3.7.1

Closed vehicle spaces are vehicle spaces which are neither open vehicle spaces nor weather decks.

3.8 Combination carriers

3.8.1

A combination carrier is a cargo ship designed to carry both oil and solid cargoes in bulk.

3.9 Continuously manned central control stations

3.9.1

A continuously manned central control station is a central control station which is continuously manned by a responsible member of the crew.

3.10 Control stations

3.10.1

Control stations are those spaces in which the ship's radio or main navigating equipment or the emergency source of power is located or where the fire recording or fire control equipment is centralized.

3.11 Crude oil

3.11.1

Crude oil is any oil occurring naturally in the earth whether or not treated to render it suitable for transportation and includes crude oil where certain distillate fractions may have been removed from, or added to.

3.12 Deadweight

3.12.1

The deadweight is the difference in tonnes between the displacement of a ship in water of a specific gravity of 1,025 t/m^3 at the load waterline corresponding to the assigned summer freeboard and the lightweight of the ship.

3.13 Flashpoint

3.13.1

Flashpoint is the temperature in degrees Celsius (closed cup test) at which a product will give off enough flammable vapour to be ignited, as determined by an approved flashpoint apparatus.

3.14 Gas carrier

3.14.1

A gas carrier is a cargo ship constructed or adapted and used for the carriage in bulk of any liquefied gas or other products of a flammable nature listed in Pt E, Ch 9, Sec 19.

3.15 Lightweight

3.15.1

The lightweight is the displacement of a ship in tonnes without cargo, fuel, lubricating oil, ballast water, fresh water and feed water in tanks, consumable stores, and passengers and crew and their effects.

3.16 Machinery spaces

3.16.1

Machinery spaces are machinery spaces of category A and other spaces containing propulsion machinery, boilers, fuel oil units, steam and internal combustion engines, generators and major electrical machinery, oil filling stations, refrigerating, stabilizing, ventilation and air conditioning machinery, and similar spaces, and trunks to such spaces.

3.17 Machinery spaces of category A

3.17.1

Machinery spaces of category A are those spaces and trunks to such spaces which contain either:

a) internal combustion machinery used for main propulsion,

b) internal combustion machinery used for purposes other than main propulsion where such machinery has in the aggregate a total power output of not less than 375 kW, or

c) any oil-fired boiler or oil fuel unit, or any oil-fired equipment other than boilers, such as inert gas generators, incinerators, etc.

3.18 Main vertical zones

3.18.1

Main vertical zones are those sections into which the hull, superstructure and deckhouses are divided by "A" class divisions, the mean length and width of which on any deck does not in general exceed 40 m.

3.19 Oil fuel unit

3.19.1

The oil fuel unit is the equipment used for the preparation of oil fuel for delivery to an oil fired boiler or equipment used for the preparation for delivery of heated oil to an internal combustion engine and includes any oil pressure pumps, filters and heaters dealing with oil at a pressure of more than 0,18 MPa.

3.19.2

"Oil fuel unit" includes any equipment used for the preparation and delivery of oil fuel, whether or not heated, to boilers (including inert gas generators) and engines (including gas turbines) at a pressure of more than 0,18 MPa.

Note 1: For the purpose of these Rules “oil fuel” has the same meaning of “fuel oil”.

3.20 Open ro-ro spaces

3.20.1

Open ro-ro spaces are those ro-ro spaces that are either open at both ends or have an opening at one end and are provided with adequate natural ventilation effective over their entire length through permanent openings distributed in the side plating or deckhead or from above, having a total area of at least 10% of the total area of the space's sides.

3.21 Open vehicle spaces

3.21.1

Open vehicle spaces are those vehicle spaces that are either open at both ends or have an opening at one end and are provided with adequate natural ventilation effective over their entire length through permanent openings distributed in the side plating or deckhead or from above, having a total area of at least 10% of the total area of the space's sides.

3.22 Passenger ship

3.22.1

A passenger ship is a ship which carries more than twelve passengers.

3.23 Public spaces

3.23.1

Public spaces are those portions of the accommodation which are used for halls, dining rooms, lounges and similar permanently enclosed spaces.

3.24 Ro-ro spaces

3.24.1

Ro-ro spaces are spaces not normally subdivided in any way and extending to either a substantial length or the entire length of the ship in which motor vehicles with fuel in their tanks for their own propulsion and/or goods (packaged or in bulk, in or on rail or road cars, vehicles (including road or rail tankers), trailers, containers, pallets, demountable tanks or in or on similar stowage units or other receptacles) can be loaded and unloaded normally in a horizontal direction.

3.25 Ro-ro passenger ship

3.25.1

Ro-ro passenger ship means a passenger ship with ro-ro spaces or special category spaces as defined in [3.27].

3.26 Service spaces

3.26.1

Service spaces are those spaces used for galleys, pantries containing cooking appliances, lockers, mail and specie rooms, storerooms, workshops other than those forming part of the machinery spaces, and similar spaces and trunks to such spaces.

3.27 Special category spaces

3.27.1

Special category spaces are those enclosed vehicle spaces above and below the bulkhead deck, into and from which vehicles can be driven and to which passengers have access. Special category spaces may be accommodated on more than one deck provided that the total overall clear height for vehicles does not exceed 10 m.

3.28 Tanker

3.28.1

A tanker is a cargo ship constructed or adapted for the carriage in bulk of liquid cargoes of an inflammable nature.

Note 1: For the purpose of this Chapter, the term tanker includes the following service notations (see Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, Tab 1):

- Chemical tanker
- Combination carrier/OBO

- Combination carrier/OOC
- Flammable liquid substances tanker
- Liquefied gas carrier
- Oil recovery ship
- Oil tanker.

3.29 Vehicle spaces

3.29.1

Vehicle spaces are cargo spaces intended for the carriage of motor vehicles with fuel in their tanks for their own propulsion.

3.30 Weather decks

3.30.1

A weather deck is a deck which is completely exposed to the weather from above and from at least two sides.

4 Type approved products

4.1

4.1.1

The following materials, equipment, systems or products in general used for fire protection are to be type approved by the Society, except for special cases for which acceptance may be given for individual ships on the basis of suitable documentation or ad hoc tests:

a) Flexible pipes and expansion bellows of non-conventional material for any type of fluid

b) Nozzles for fixed pressure water-spraying fire-extinguishing systems for machinery spaces and boiler rooms

c) Sensing heads for automatic fire alarm and fire detection systems.

d) Fixed fire detection and fire alarm systems

e) Explosive mixture detecting systems

f) Portable explosive mixture detecting apparatus

g) Fixed instruments for measuring the oxygen content for inert gas systems serving cargo tanks

h) Portable instruments for measuring the oxygen content for inert gas systems serving cargo tanks.

5 Probability of ignition

5.1 Arrangements for gaseous fuel for domestic purposes

5.1.1

In general gaseous fuel systems may only be considered for cargo ships.

However, this does not preclude the use, on passenger ships, of movable cooking appliances - the so-called "flambé carts" - providing they meet the following requirements:

a) Constructional requirements:

1) In addition to the main gas supply valve, the flambe carts are equipped with an emergency gas shut-off valve which can be activated:

   - manually by the operator, either by pulling on a metallic wire loop or using a rod pull type lever;
   - automatically with a mechanical (in general gravity type) tip over device which will shut off the gas flow from the gas cylinder should the cart accidentally tip over.

2) The regulation system ensures a pressure of about 0,0001 MPa downstream from the regulator itself.

3) A pressure gauge is fitted between the gas cylinder and the regulation system, to indicate the gas pressure inside the cylinder.

4) Special materials are used for the low pressure hose (between the regulation system and the stove) so that, in case of fire, the hose melts and closes on itself acting as an automatic check valve.

5) The gas cylinder is safely secured on its cradle inside the cart.

6) A safely re-ignition system is provided to automatically relight the burner if the flame goes out when the gas valve is "on".

7) At least two of the four swivel castors are equipped with brakes, to block the cart in position.

b) Operational requirements.

Flambé carts complying with the constructional requirements listed under item a) above may be used in public spaces (restaurant, buffet, etc.) on passenger ships under the following conditions, the implementation of which is the Owner's responsibility:

1) The carts are safely secured, specially when they are left unmanned in the space where they are used.

2) The number of carts permitted in a public space is such that the free volume at ambient temperature and atmospheric pressure of the natural gas contained in the cylinders of all the carts is less than 2% of the gross volume of the public space.

3) No spare full gas cylinders are permitted on board.

Empty bottles are replaced only when the ship is in the harbour.

5.2 Cargo area of tankers

5.2.1 Restriction on boundary openings

Where driven shafts pass through pump room bulkhead or deck plating, gas-tight glands are to be fitted. The glands are to be efficiently lubricated from outside the pump room. The seal parts of the glands are to be of material that will not initiate sparks. The glands are to be constructed and fitted in accordance with the relevant Rules for fittings attached to watertight bulkheads and, if a bellows piece is incorporated in the design, it is to be pressure tested before fitting.

5.2.2 Ventilation systems in cargo pump rooms

Discharges and air inlets are to be located at a vertical distance of at least 2,4 m from the open deck. Air discharges are also to be arranged at a horizontal distance of not less than 3 m from any other opening leading to the served spaces.

The ventilation system capable of providing the required air changes per hour is to comply with the following as applicable:

a) in order to avoid air stagnation zones, air exhaust ports inside the pump room are to be adequately distributed and the various landings are to consist of open gratings or perforated flats;

b) inlet ducts are generally to end at the top of the room and outlet ducts are to extend below the floor plates, with suction ports at the level of the upper edge of ordinary floors or bottom longitudinals;

c) in addition, suction ducts are to be provided with an emergency intake at approximately 2 m above the pump room lower grating, with a shutter capable of being opened or closed both at lower grating level and from the weather deck level, so that suction normally occurs through the lower suction ports and, in the event of the pump room flooding, through those at the top branched from the emergency intake;

d) an arrangement involving a specific ratio of areas of upper emergency and lower main ventilator openings, which can be shown to result in at least the required 20 air changes per hour through the lower inlets, can be adopted without the use of shutters.

When the lower access inlets are closed then at least 15 air changes per hour are to be obtained through the upper inlets.

5.2.3 Ventilation systems in spaces other than the cargo pump room

Hose lockers and enclosed or partially enclosed spaces adjacent to cargo tanks are to be independently ventilated, in general by mechanical ventilation (exhaust) where such spaces are normally attended by the crew. In general, the arrangement of inlets and outlets serving these spaces is to comply with the provisions set out in [5.2.2] a).

5.2.4 Gas measurements

a) Portable instruments

Every oil tanker is to be provided with at least two portable gas detectors capable of measuring flammable vapour concentrations in air and at least two portable O_2 analysers. In addition, for tankers fitted with inert gas systems, at least two portable gas detectors are to be capable of measuring concentrations of flammable vapours in inerted atmosphere.

b) Arrangement for gas measurement in double hull and double bottom spaces.

Gas analysing units with non-explosion proof measuring equipment associated to the fixed gas sampling line system may be located in areas outside cargo areas, e.g. in the cargo control room, navigation bridge or engine room, when mounted on the forward bulkhead facing the cargo area provided the following requirements are observed:

- sampling lines are not to run through gas-safe spaces, except where permitted under the last bullet below;
- the gas sampling pipes are to be equipped with flame arresters. Sample gas is to be led to the atmosphere with outlets arranged in a safe location;
- bulkhead penetrations of sample pipes between safe and dangerous areas are to be approved by the Society and to have the same fire integrity as the division penetrated. A manual isolating valve is to be fitted in each of the sampling lines at the bulkhead on the gas-safe side;
- the gas detection equipment, including sample piping, sample pumps, solenoids, analysing units etc., is to be located in a reasonably gas-tight enclosure (e.g. a fully enclosed steel cabinet with a gasketed door), which is to be monitored by its own sampling point. At gas concentration above 30% of the lower flammable limit (LFL) inside the enclosure, the entire gas analysing unit is to be automatically shut down;

  and
- where the enclosure cannot be arranged directly on the bulkhead facing the cargo area, sample pipes are to be of steel or other equivalent material and without detachable connections, except for the connection points for isolating valves at the bulkhead and analysing units, and are to be routed along the shortest path.

5.2.5 Safety aspects of double hull spaces, double bottoms and duct keels under cargo oil tanks

Pipe ducts in the double bottom are to comply with the following requirements:

a) In general, they are not to communicate with the engine room. When access is provided from a pump room, a watertight door is to be fitted complying with the requirements of Pt B, Ch 2, Sec 1, [6.2.1] and, in addition, with the following:

1) in addition to operation from the bridge, the watertight door is to be capable of being manually closed from outside the main pump room entrance; and

2) the watertight door is to be kept closed during normal operation of the ship except when access to the pipe tunnel is required.

b) For double bottoms and ducts keels, provision is to be made for at least two exits to the open deck arranged as far apart from each other as practicable. One of these exits fitted with a watertight closure may lead to the cargo pump room;

c) In the duct, provision is to be made for adequate mechanical ventilation.

5.3 Non-sparking fans

5.3.1 General

Where non-sparking fans are required by the Rules, the provisions of [5.3.2] and [5.3.3] are also to be complied with.

5.3.2 Design criteria

a) The air gap between the impeller and the casing is to be not less than 0,1 of the shaft diameter in way of the impeller bearing and in any case not less than 2 mm, but need not exceed 13 mm.

b) Protective screens with square mesh of not more than 13 mm are to be fitted to the inlet and outlet of ventilation openings on the open deck to prevent objects entering the fan housing.

5.3.3 Materials

a) Except as indicated in the fourth bullet of item c) below, the impeller and the housing in way of the impeller are to be made of spark-proof materials which are recognised as such by means of an appropriate test to the satisfaction of the Society.

b) Electrostatic charges, both in the rotating body and the casing, are to be prevented by the use of antistatic materials. Furthermore, the installation on board of ventilation units is to be such as to ensure their safe bonding to the hull.

c) Tests may not be required for fans having the following material combinations:

- impellers and/or housings of non-metallic material, due regard being paid to the elimination of static electricity
- impellers and housings of non-ferrous materials
- impellers of aluminium alloys or magnesium alloys and a ferrous (including austenitic stainless steel) housing on which a ring of suitable thickness of non-ferrous material is fitted in way of the impeller
- any combination of ferrous (including austenitic stainless steel) impellers and housings with not less than 13 mm design tip clearance.

d) The following impeller and housing combinations are considered as sparking and therefore are not permitted:

- impellers of an aluminium alloy or a magnesium alloy and a ferrous housing, regardless of tip clearance
- housings made of an aluminium alloy or a magnesium alloy and a ferrous impeller, regardless of tip clearance
- any combination of ferrous impeller and housing with less than 13 mm design tip clearance.

e) Complete fans are to be tested in accordance either with the Society's requirements or national or international standards accepted by the Society.

6 Suppression of fire - detection and alarm

6.1 Protection of machinery spaces

6.1.1 Installation

Fire detecting systems to be fitted in unattended machinery spaces are also to comply with the following:

a) the system is to be designed with self-monitoring properties. Power or system failures are to initiate an audible alarm distinguishable from the fire alarm.

b) The fire detection indicating panel is to be located on the navigating bridge, fire control station, or other accessible place where a fire in the machinery space will not render it inoperative.

c) The fire detection indicating panel is to indicate the place of the detected fire in accordance with the arranged fire zones by means of a visual signal. Audible signals clearly distinguishable in character from any other audible signals are to be audible throughout the navigating bridge and the accommodation area of the personnel responsible for the operation of the machinery space.

d) Fire detectors are to be of types, and so located, that they will rapidly detect the onset of fire in conditions normally present in the machinery space. Consideration is to be given to avoiding false alarms. The type and location of detectors are to be approved by the Society and a combination of detector types is recommended in order to enable the system to react to more than one type of fire symptom.

e) Fire detector zones are to be arranged in a manner that will enable the operating staff to locate the seat of the fire. The arrangement and the number of loops and the location of detector heads are to be approved in each case. Air currents created by the machinery are not to render the detection system ineffective.

f) When fire detectors are provided with the means to adjust their sensitivity, necessary arrangements are to be ensured to fix and identify the set point.

g) When it is intended that a particular loop or detector is to be temporarily switched off, this state is to be clearly indicated. Reactivation of the loop or detector is to be performed automatically after a preset time.

h) The fire detection indicating panel is to be provided with facilities for functional testing.

i) The fire detecting system is to be fed automatically from the emergency source of power by a separate feeder if the main source of power fails.

j) Facilities are to be provided in the fire detecting system to manually release the fire alarm from the following places:

- passageways having entrances to the engine and boiler rooms,
- the navigating bridge and control station in the engine room.

k) The testing of the fire detecting system on board is to be carried out to the satisfaction of the Society.

For the fire detecting system for unattended machinery spaces, see also Pt F, Ch 3, Sec 2.

7 Suppression of fire: fire - fighting

7.1 Fire-extinguishing arrangements in machinery spaces

7.1.1 General

a) Air pipes from oil fuel tanks are to be led to a safe position on the open deck. Air pipes from lubricating oil storage tanks may terminate in the machinery space, provided that the open ends are so situated that issuing oil cannot come into contact with electrical equipment or heated surfaces.

Any overflow pipe is to have a sectional area of at least 1,25 times that of the filling pipe and is to be led to an overflow tank of adequate capacity or to a storage tank having space reserved for overflow purposes.

An alarm device is to be provided to give warning when the oil reaches a predetermined level in the tank, or alternatively, a sight glass is to be provided in the overflow pipe to indicate when any tank is overflowing. Such sight glasses are to be placed on vertical pipes only and in readily visible positions.

b) Short sounding pipes may be used for tanks other than double bottom tanks without the additional closed level gauge provided an overflow system is fitted.

c) Level switches may be used below the tank top provided they are contained in a steel enclosure or other enclosures not capable of being destroyed by fire.

d) Controls required by this regulation are to be also provided from the compartment itself.

e) Hose clamps and similar types of attachments for flexible pipes are permitted.

f) Oil fuel in storage tanks is not to be heated to temperatures within 10°C below the flashpoint of the oil fuel, except that where oil fuel in service tanks, settling tanks and any other tanks in the supply system is heated the following arrangements are to be provided:

- the length of the vent pipes from such tanks and/or a cooling device is sufficient for cooling the vapours to below 60°C, or the outlet of the vent pipes is located 3 m away from a source of ignition;
- the vent pipes are fitted with flame screens;
- there are no openings from the vapour space of the fuel tanks into machinery spaces (bolted manholes are acceptable);
- enclosed spaces are not located directly over such fuel tanks, except for vented cofferdams;
- electrical equipment is not fitted in the vapour space of the tanks, unless it is certified to be intrinsically safe.

g) In the proximity of any electrical switchboard or section board having a power of 20 kW and upwards at least one CO_2 or powder extinguisher is to be fitted.

7.1.2 Fixed local application fire-fighting systems

This item applies to the installation of electrical and electronic equipment in engine rooms protected by fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems (FWBLAFFS).

a) The following definitions apply (see also Fig 1):

1) Protected space: a machinery space where a FWBLAFFS is installed.

2) Protected areas: areas within a protected space which are required to be protected by FWBLAFFS.

3) Adjacent areas:

- areas, other than protected areas, exposed to direct spray
- areas, other than those defined above, where water may extend.

b) The electrical and electronic equipment enclosures located within areas protected by FWBLAFFS and those within adjacent areas exposed to direct spray is to have a degree of protection not less than IP44, except where evidence of suitability is submitted to and approved by the Society.

c) The electrical and electronic equipment within adjacent areas not exposed to direct spray may have a lower degree of protection provided evidence of suitability for use in these areas is submitted taking into account the design and equipment layout, e.g. position of inlet ventilation openings, and that cooling airflow for the equipment is assured.

Note 1: Additional precautions may be required to be taken in respect of:

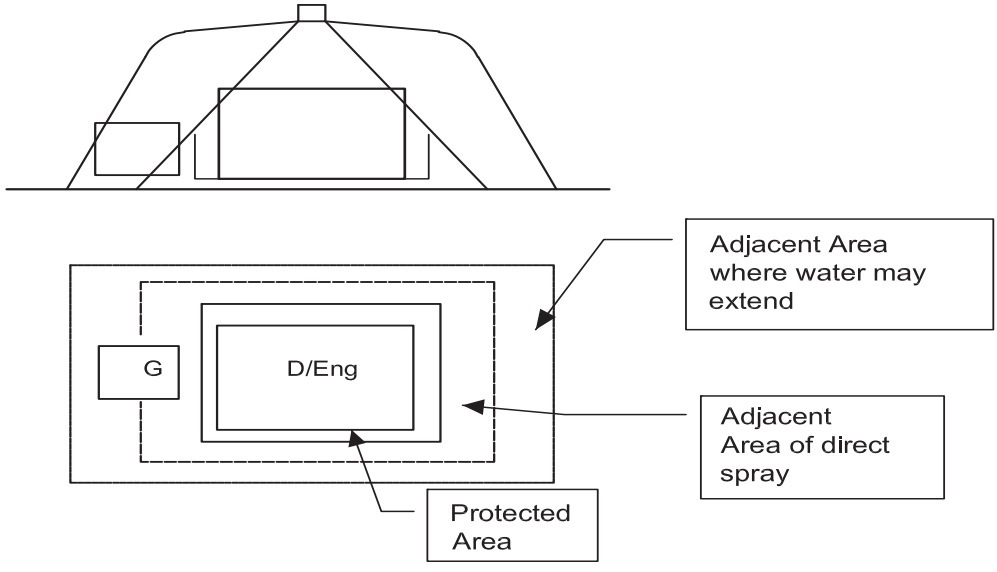
a) tracking as a result of water entering the equipment

b) potential damage as a result of residual salts from sea water systems

c) high voltage installations

d) personnel protection against electric shock.

Figure 1



8 Fire safety systems: General requirements and application for inert gas systems

8.1 General requirements

8.1.1

The inert gas system is to be capable of inerting, purging and gas-freeing empty cargo tanks and maintaining the atmosphere in cargo tanks with the required oxygen content.

8.1.2

The inert gas system referred to in [8.2.1] is to be designed, constructed and tested in accordance with the requirements of [9]. Unless otherwise stated, for materials and design criteria of piping and relevant accessories reference is to be made to Ch 1, Sec 10.

8.1.3

Tankers fitted with a fixed inert gas system are to be provided with a closed ullage system.

8.2 Application

8.2.1 *(1/1/2016)*

For tankers (including chemical carriers and gas carriers) of 8,000 tonnes deadweight and upwards, cargo tanks are to be protected by a fixed inert gas system in accordance with the requirements of [9], except that, for tankers of less than 20,000 tonnes deadweight in lieu of the fixed installations required in [9] the Society, after having given consideration to the ship's arrangement and equipment, may accept other equivalent arrangements or means of protection in accordance with [8.3].

8.2.2

Tankers operating with a cargo tank cleaning procedure using crude oil washing are to be fitted with an inert gas system complying with the requirements of [9] and with fixed tank washing machines.

8.2.3

Tankers required to be fitted with inert gas systems are to comply with the following provisions:

a) double hull spaces are to be fitted with suitable connections for the supply of inert gas

b) where hull spaces are connected to a permanently fitted inert gas distribution system, means are to be provided to prevent hydrocarbon gases from the cargo tanks entering the double hull space through the system and

c) where such spaces are not permanently connected to an inert gas distribution system, appropriate means are to be provided to allow connection to the inert gas main.

8.2.4

The requirements for inert gas systems given in [9] need not be applied to:

a) chemical tankers and gas carriers, when carrying crude oil and petroleum products having a flashpoint not exceeding 60°C (closed cup test), provided that they comply with the requirements for inert gas systems on chemical tankers in [9], or

b) chemical tankers and gas carriers when carrying flammable cargoes other than crude oil or petroleum products such as cargoes listed in Chapter 17 and 18 of the International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk, provided that the capacity of tanks used for their carriage does not exceed 3000 m^3, the individual nozzle capacities of tank washing machines do not exceed 17,5 m^3/h and the total combined throughput from the number of machines in use in a cargo tank at any one time does not exceed 110 m^3/h.

8.3 Requirements for equivalent systems

8.3.1

When an installation equivalent to a fixed inert gas system is installed, it is to:

a) be capable of preventing dangerous accumulations of explosive mixtures in intact cargo tanks during normal service throughout the ballast voyage and necessary in-tank operations, and

b) be so designed as to minimise the risk of ignition from the generation of static electricity by the system itself.

9 Inert gas systems

9.1 Contents

9.1.1 *(1/1/2016)*

This item [9] gives the specifications for inert gas systems in cargo oil tanks and double hull spaces in oil tankers, chemical tankers and gas carriers as required by this Chapter.

9.2 Engineering specifications

9.2.1 Definitions *(1/1/2016)*

For the purposes of this item [9], the following definitions apply:

a) Cargo tanks means those cargo tanks, including slop tanks, which carry cargoes, or cargo residues, having a flashpoint not exceeding 60ºC.

b) Inert gas system includes inert gas systems using flue gas, inert gas generators, and nitrogen generators and means the inert gas plant and inert gas distribution together with means for preventing backflow of cargo gases to machinery spaces, fixed and portable measuring instruments and control devices.

c) Gas-safe space is a space in which the entry of gases would produce hazards with regard to flammability or toxicity.

d) Gas-free is a condition in a tank where the content of hydrocarbon or other flammable vapour is less than 1% of the lower flammable limit (LFL), the oxygen content is at least 21%, and no toxic gases are present.

9.3 Requirements for all systems

9.3.1 General *(1/1/2016)*

a) The inert gas system referred to in chapter II-2 of the Convention is to be designed, constructed and tested to the satisfaction of the Society. It is to be designed to be capable of rendering and maintaining the atmosphere of the relevant cargo tanks non-flammable

b) The system is to be capable of:

1) inerting empty cargo tanks and maintaining the atmosphere in any part of the tank with an oxygen content not exceeding 8% by volume and at a positive pressure in port and at sea except when it is necessary for such a tank to be gas-free;

2) eliminating the need for air to enter a tank during normal operations except when it is necessary for such a tank to be gas-free;

3) purging empty cargo tanks of hydrocarbon or other flammable vapours, so that subsequent gas-freeing operations will at no time create a flammable atmosphere within the tank;

4) delivering inert gas to the cargo tanks at a rate of at least 125% of the maximum rate of discharge capacity of the ship expressed as a volume.

For chemical tankers and chemical/product tankers, the Society may accept inert gas systems having a lower delivery capacity provided that the maximum rate of discharge of cargoes from cargo tanks being protected by the system is restricted to not more than 80% of the inert gas capacity; and

5) delivering inert gas with an oxygen content of not more than 5% by volume to the cargo tanks at any required rate of flow.

c) Materials used in inert gas systems are to be suitable for their intended purpose. In particular, those components which may be subjected to corrosive action of the gases and/or liquids are to be either constructed of corrosion-resistant material or lined with rubber, glass fibre epoxy resin or other equivalent coating material.

d) The inert gas supply may be:

1) treated flue gas from main or auxiliary boilers, or

2) gas from an oil or gas-fired gas generator, or

3) gas from nitrogen generators.

The Society may accept systems using inert gases from one or more separate gas generators or other sources or any combination thereof, provided that an equivalent level of safety is achieved. Such systems are, as far as practicable, to comply with the requirements of this chapter. Systems using stored carbon dioxide are not to be permitted unless the Society is satisfied that the risk of ignition from generation of static electricity by the system itself is minimized.

9.3.2 Safety measures *(1/1/2016)*

a) The inert gas system is to be so designed that the maximum pressure which it can exert on any cargo tank will not exceed the test pressure of any cargo tank.

b) Automatic shutdown of the inert gas system and its component parts are to be arranged on predetermined limits being reached, taking into account the provisions of [9.3.4], [9.4.3] and [9.5.3].

c) Suitable shutoff arrangements are to be provided on the discharge outlet of each generator plant.

d) The system is to be designed to ensure that if the oxygen content exceeds 5% by volume, the inert gas is to be automatically vented to atmosphere.

e) Arrangements are to be provided to enable the functioning of the inert gas plant to be stabilized before commencing cargo discharge. If blowers are to be used for gas-freeing, their air inlets are to be provided with blanking arrangements.

f) Where a double block and bleed valve is installed, the system is to ensure upon loss of power that the block valves are automatically closed and the bleed valve is automatically open.

9.3.3 System components *(1/1/2016)*

a) Non-return devices

1) At least two non-return devices are to be fitted in order to prevent the return of vapour and liquid to the inert gas plant, or to any gas-safe spaces.

2) The first non-return device is to be a deck seal of the wet, semi-wet, or dry type or a double-block and bleed arrangement. Two shut-off valves in series with a venting valve in between may be accepted provided:
   - the operation of the valve is automatically executed. Signal(s) for opening/closing is (are) to be taken from the process directly, e.g. inert gas flow or differential pressure; and
   - alarm for faulty operation of the valves is provided, e.g. the operation status of "blower stop" and "supply valve(s) open" is an alarm condition.
3) The second non-return device is to be a non-return valve or equivalent capable of preventing the return of vapours and liquids and fitted between the deck water seal (or equivalent device) and the first connection from the inert gas main to a cargo tank. It is to be provided with positive means of closure. As an alternative to positive means of closure, an additional valve having such means of closure may be provided between the non-return valve and the first connection to the cargo tanks to isolate the deck water seal, or equivalent device, from the inert gas main to the cargo tanks.
4) A water seal, if fitted, is to be capable of being supplied by two separate pumps, each of which is to be capable of maintaining an adequate supply at all times. The audible and visual alarm on the low level of water in the water seal are to operate at all times.
5) The arrangement of the water seal, or equivalent devices, and its associated fittings are to be such that it will prevent backflow of vapours and liquids and will ensure the proper functioning of the seal under operating conditions.
6) Provision is to be made to ensure that the water seal is protected against freezing, in such a way that the integrity of the seal is not impaired by overheating.
7) A water loop or other approved arrangement is also to be fitted to each associated water supply and drain pipe and each venting or pressure-sensing pipe leading to gas-safe spaces. Means are to be provided to prevent such loops from being emptied by vacuum.
8) Any water seal, or equivalent device, and loop arrangements are to be capable of preventing the return of vapours and liquids to an inert gas plant at a pressure equal to the test pressure of the cargo tanks.
9) The non-return devices are to be located in the cargo area on deck.

b) Inert gas lines
1) The inert gas main may be divided into two or more branches forward of the non-return devices required by [9.3.3] a).
2) The inert gas main is to be fitted with branch piping leading to the cargo tank. Branch piping for inert gas is to be fitted with either stop valves or equivalent means of control for isolating each tank. Where stop valves are fitted, they are to be provided with locking arrangements. The control system is to provide unambiguous information of the operational status of such valves to at least the control panel required in [9.3.4].
3) Each cargo tank not being inerted is to be capable of being separated from the inert gas main by:
   - removing spool-pieces, valves or other pipe sections, and blanking the pipe ends; or
   - arrangement of two spectacle flanges in series with provisions for detecting leakage into the pipe between the two spectacle flanges; or
   - equivalent arrangements to the satisfaction of the Society, providing at least the same level of protection.
4) Means are to be provided to protect cargo tanks against the effect of overpressure or vacuum caused by thermal variations and/or cargo operations when the cargo tanks are isolated from the inert gas mains.
5) Piping systems are to be so designed as to prevent the accumulation of cargo or water in the pipelines under all normal conditions.
6) Arrangements are to be provided to enable the inert gas main to be connected to an external supply of inert gas. The arrangements are to consist of a 250 mm nominal pipe size bolted flange, isolated from the inert gas main by a valve and located forward of the non-return valve. The design of the flange should conform to the appropriate class in the standards adopted for the design of other external connections in the ship's cargo piping system.
7) If a connection is fitted between the inert gas main and the cargo piping system, arrangements are to be made to ensure an effective isolation having regard to the large pressure difference which may exist between the systems. This is to consist of two shutoff valves with an arrangement to vent the space between the valves in a safe manner or an arrangement consisting of a spool-piece with associated blanks.
8) The valve separating the inert gas main from the cargo main and which is on the cargo main side is to be a non-return valve with a positive means of closure.
9) Inert gas piping systems are not to pass through accommodation, service and control station spaces.
10) In combination carriers, the arrangement to isolate the slop tanks containing oil or oil residues from other tanks is to consist of blank flanges which will remain in position at all times when cargoes other than oil are being carried except as provided for in the relevant section of the guidelines developed by IMO (see Note 1).

Note 1: Refer to the Revised Guidelines for inert gas systems (IMO MSC/Circ.353), as amended by IMO MSC/Circ.387.

9.3.4 Indicators and alarms *(1/1/2016)*

a) The operation status of the inert gas system is to be indicated in a control panel.

b) Instrumentation is to be fitted for continuously indicating and permanently recording, when inert gas is being supplied:

1) the pressure of the inert gas mains forward of the non-return devices; and

2) the oxygen content of the inert gas.

c) The indicating and recording devices are to be placed in the cargo control room where provided. But where no cargo control room is provided, they are to be placed in a position easily accessible to the officer in charge of cargo operations.

d) In addition, meters are to be fitted:

1) on the navigating bridge to indicate at all times the pressure referred to in b) 1) and the pressure in the slop tanks of combination carriers, whenever those tanks are isolated from the inert gas main; and

2) in the machinery control room or in the machinery space to indicate the oxygen content referred to in b) 2).

e) Audible and visual alarms

1) Audible and visual alarms are to be provided, based on the system designed, to indicate:

- oxygen content in excess of 5% by volume;
- failure of the power supply to the indicating devices as referred to in b);
- gas pressure less than 100 mm water gauge. The alarm arrangement is to be such as to ensure that the pressure in slop tanks in combination carriers can be monitored at all times;
- high-gas pressure; and
- failure of the power supply to the automatic control system.

2) The alarms required in first, third and fifth bullet of the above item 1) are to be fitted in the machinery space and cargo control room, where provided, but in each case in such a position that they are immediately received by responsible members of the crew.

3) An audible alarm system independent of that required in the third bullet of the above item 1) or automatic shutdown of cargo pumps are to be provided to operate on predetermined limits of low pressure in the inert gas main being reached.

4) Two oxygen sensors are to be positioned at appropriate locations in the space or spaces containing the inert gas system. If the oxygen level falls below 19%, these sensors are to trigger alarms, which are to be both visible and audible inside and outside the space or spaces and are to be placed in such a position that they are immediately received by responsible members of the crew.

9.3.5 Instruction manuals *(1/1/2016)*

Detailed instruction manuals are to be provided on board, covering the operations, safety and maintenance requirements and occupational health hazards relevant to the inert gas system and its application to the cargo tank system (see Note 1). The manuals are to include guidance on procedures to be followed in the event of a fault or failure of the inert gas system.

Note 1: Refer to the Revised Guidelines for inert gas systems (IMO MSC/Circ.353), as amended by IMO MSC/Circ.387.

9.4 Requirements for flue gas and inert gas generator systems

9.4.1 Application *(1/1/2016)*

In addition to the provisions [9.3], for inert gas systems using flue gas or inert gas generators, the provisions of this item [9.4] are to be applied.

9.4.2 System requirements *(1/1/2016)*

a) Inert gas generators

1) two fuel oil pumps are to be fitted to the inert gas generator. Suitable fuel in sufficient quantity is to be provided for the inert gas generators.

2) the inert gas generators are to be located outside the cargo tank area. Spaces containing inert gas generators are to have no direct access to accommodation, service or control station spaces, but may be located in machinery spaces. If they are not located in machinery spaces, such a compartment is to be separated by a gastight steel bulkhead and/or deck from accommodation, service and control station spaces. Adequate positive-pressure-type mechanical ventilation is to be provided for such a compartment.

b) Gas regulating valves

1) A gas regulating valve is to be fitted in the inert gas main. This valve is to be automatically controlled to close, as required in [9.3.2] b). It is also to be capable of automatically regulating the flow of inert gas to the cargo tanks unless means are provided to automatically control the inert gas flow rate.

2) The gas regulating valve is to be located at the forward bulkhead of the forward most gas-safe space through which the inert gas main passes.

c) Cooling and scrubbing arrangement

1) Means are to be fitted which will effectively cool the volume of gas specified in [9.3.1] b) and remove solids and sulphur combustion products. The cooling water arrangements are to be such that an adequate supply of water will always be available without interfering with any essential services on the ship. Provision is also to be made for an alternative supply of cooling water.

2) Filters or equivalent devices are to be fitted to minimize the amount of water carried over to the inert gas blowers.

d) Blowers

1) At least two inert gas blowers are to be fitted and be capable of delivering to the cargo tanks at least the volume of gas required by [9.3.1] b). For systems fitted with inert gas generators, the Society may permit only one blower if that system is capable of delivering the total volume of gas required by [9.3.1] b) to the cargo tanks, provided that sufficient spares for

the blower and its prime mover are carried on board to enable any failure of the blower and its prime mover to be rectified by the ship's crew.

2) Where inert gas generators are served by positive displacement blowers, a pressure relief device is to be provided to prevent excess pressure being developed on the discharge side of the blower.

3) When two blowers are provided, the total required capacity of the inert gas system is to be divided evenly between the two and in no case is one blower to have a capacity less than 1/3 of the total required.

e) Inert gas isolating valves

For systems using flue gas, flue gas isolating valves are to be fitted in the inert gas mains between the boiler uptakes and the flue gas scrubber. These valves are to be provided with indicators to show whether they are open or shut, and precautions are to be taken to maintain them gastight and keep the seatings clear of soot. Arrangements are to be made to ensure that boiler soot blowers cannot be operated when the corresponding flue gas valve is open.

f) Prevention of flue gas leakage

1) Special consideration is to be given to the design and location of scrubber and blowers with relevant piping and fittings in order to prevent flue gas leakages into enclosed spaces.

2) To permit safe maintenance, an additional water seal or other effective means of preventing flue gas leakage is to be fitted between the flue gas isolating valves and scrubber or incorporated in the gas entry to the scrubber.

9.4.3 Indicators and alarms *(1/1/2016)*

a) In addition to the requirements in [9.3.4] b), means are to be provided for continuously indicating the temperature of the inert gas at the discharge side of the system, whenever it is operating.

b) In addition to the requirements of [9.3.4] e), audible and visual alarms are to be provided to indicate:

1) insufficient fuel oil supply to the oil-fired inert gas generator;

2) failure of the power supply to the generator;

3) low water pressure or low water flow rate to the cooling and scrubbing arrangement;

4) high water level in the cooling and scrubbing arrangement;

5) high gas temperature;

6) failure of the inert gas blowers; and

7) low water level in the water seal.

9.5 Requirements for nitrogen generator systems

9.5.1 Application *(1/1/2016)*

In addition to the provisions in [9.3], for inert gas systems using nitrogen generators, the provisions of this item [9.5] are to be applied.

9.5.2 System requirements *(1/1/2016)*

a) The inert gas is to be high purity nitrogen produced by separating air into its component gases by passing compressed air through a bundle of hollow fibres, semi-permeable membranes or absorber material.

b) The system is to consist of a feed air treatment system and any number of membrane or absorber modules in parallel necessary to meet the requirements in [9.3.1] d).

c) The system is to be provided with one or more compressors to generate enough positive pressure to be capable of delivering the total volume of gas required by [9.3.1] b).

d) Where two compressors are provided, the total required capacity of the system is preferably to be divided equally between the two compressors, and in no case is one compressor to have a capacity less than 1/3 of the total capacity required.

e) A feed air treatment system is to be fitted to remove free water, particles and traces of oil from the compressed air, while preserving the gas temperature according to specification.

f) The oxygen-enriched air from the nitrogen generator and the nitrogen-product enriched gas from the protective devices of the nitrogen receiver are to be discharged to a safe location (see Note 1) on the open deck.

Note 1: “safe location" needs to address the two types of discharges separately:

- oxygen-enriched air from the nitrogen generator - safe locations on the open deck are:
  - outside of hazardous area;
  - not within 3m of areas traversed by personnel; and
  - not within 6m of air intakes for machinery (engines and boilers) and all ventilation inlets.
- nitrogen-product enriched gas from the protective devices of the nitrogen receiver - safe locations on the open deck are:
  - not within 3m of areas traversed by personnel; and
  - not within 6m of air intakes for machinery (engines and boilers) and all ventilation inlets/outlets

g) The air compressor and nitrogen generator may be installed in the engine-room or in a separate compartment. A separate compartment and any installed equipment is to be treated as an "Other machinery space" with respect to fire protection. Where a separate compartment is provided for the nitrogen generator, the compartment is to be fitted with an independent mechanical extraction ventilation system providing six air changes per hour. The compartment is to have no

direct access to accommodation spaces, service spaces and control stations.

h) Where a nitrogen receiver or a buffer tank is installed, it may be installed in a dedicated compartment, in a separate compartment containing the air compressor and the generator, in the engine room, or in the cargo area. Where the nitrogen receiver or a buffer tank is installed in an enclosed space, the access is to be arranged only from the open deck and the access door is to be opened outwards. Adequate, independent mechanical ventilation, of the extraction type, is to be provided for such a compartment.

i) In order to permit maintenance, means of isolation are to be fitted between the generator and the receiver.

j) The system is to be fitted with automatic means to discharge "off-spec" gas to the atmosphere during start-up and abnormal operation.

9.5.3 Indicators and alarms *(1/1/2016)*

a) In addition to the requirements in [9.3.4] b), instrumentation is to be provided for continuously indicating the temperature and pressure of air at the suction side of the nitrogen generator.

b) In addition to the requirements in [9.3.4] e), audible and visual alarms are to be provided to include:

1) failure of the electric heater, if fitted;

2) low feed-air pressure or flow from the compressor;

3) high-air temperature; and

4) high condensate level at automatic drain of water separator.

9.6 Nitrogen /Inert Gas Systems Fitted for Purposes other than Inerting Required by SOLAS Reg. II-2/4.5.5.1 and 4.5.5.2

9.6.1 Application *(1/1/2016)*

This item [9.6] applies to systems fitted on oil tankers, gas tankers or chemical tankers to which SOLAS regulations II-2/4.5.5.1 and 4.5.5.2 do not apply.

9.6.2 Applicable requirements *(1/1/2016)*

Items [9.3.2] b), [9.3.2] d), [9.3.4] b), [9.3.4] c), first and second bullet of [9.3.4] e)1), [9.3.4] e)4), [9.5.2] c), [9.5.2] e), [9.5.2] g), [9.5.2] h), [9.5.3]a) and b), as applicable, apply to the systems.

The requirements in [9.5.2] a), e), f) and j)] apply.

9.6.3 Installation and tests *(1/1/2016)*

All the equipment is to be installed on board and tested under working conditions to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

9.6.4 Non-return devices *(1/1/2016)*

The two non-return devices as required by [9.3.3] a)1) are to be fitted in the inert gas main. The non-return devices are to comply with [9.3.3] a)2) and [9.3.3] a)3); however, where the connections to the cargo tanks, to the hold spaces or to cargo piping are not permanent, the non-return devices required by [9.3.3] a)1) may be substituted by two non-return valves.